CAMBRIDGE

# English Phrasal Verbs in Use

70 units of vocabulary reference and practice

Self-study and classroom use

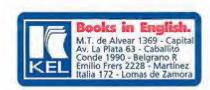
Michael McCarthy Felicity O'Dell

# English Phrasal Verbs in Use

70 units of vocabulary reference and practice

Self-study and classroom use

Michael McCarthy Felicity O'Dell





PUBLISHED BY THE PRESS SYNDICATE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge, United Kingdom

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, UK 40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011-4211, USA 477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia Ruiz de Alarcón 13, 28014 Madrid, Spain Dock House, The Waterfront, Cape Town 8001, South Africa http://www.cambridge.org

© Cambridge University Press 2004

This book is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2004 Third printing 2004

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

Typeface Sabon 10/12pt. System QuarkXPress® [OD&I]

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN 0 521 52727 9 paperback

## Contents

Acknowledgements 3 Using this book 4

#### Learning about phrasal verbs

- 1 Phrasal verbs: the basics
- 2 Phrasal verbs: what they mean
- 3 Particles in phrasal verbs
- 4 Nouns and adjectives based on phrasal verbs

Wy or de

5 Metaphor and register

#### Key verbs

- 6 Come
- 7 Get
- 8 Go
- 9 Look
- 10 Make
- 11 Put
- 12 Take

#### **Key particles**

- 13 Up
- 14 Out
- 15 Off
- 16 On and in
- 17 Down and over
- 18 Around and about
- 19 For and with
- 20 Through and back
- 21 Into and away

#### Concepts

- 22 Time: spending time
- 23 Time: passing of time
- 24 Location
- 25 Cause and effect
- 26 Change
- 27 Success and failure
- 28 Starting and finishing
- 29 Actions and movement
- 30 Destroying and reacting to destruction
- 31 Communication

#### **Functions**

- 32 Describing people and places
- 33 Describing public events
- 34 Describing situations
- 35 Giving and getting information
- 36 Solving problems

- 37 Decisions and plans
- 38 Disagreeing
- 39 Persuading
- 40 Praising and criticising
- 41 Exclamations and warnings

#### Work, study and finance

- 42 The classroom and learning
- 43 Student life: courses and exams
- 44 Student life: reading and writing
- 45 Work: jobs and career
- 46 Work: being busy
- 47 Money: salaries, bills, payments

11 1

- 48 Money: buying and selling
- 49 Business
- 50 Telephoning

#### Personal life

- 51 Feelings
- 52 Relationships
- 53 Relationships: problems
- 54 Secrets and conversations
- 55 Stages through life
- 56 Health
- 57 Sport
- 58 Homes and daily routines
- 59 Socialising
- 60 Food and drink

#### The world around us

- 61 Weather
- 62 Travel
- 63 Driving
- 64 Technology
- 65 Computers
- 66 News
- 67 Crime
- 68 Power and authority
- 69 American and Australian phrasal verbs
- 70 New phrasal verbs

Key 146

Mini dictionary 183

# Acknowledgements

This book, like all our other books in the In Use series, is the result of the work of many people. Cambridge University Press editors, reviewers, designers, marketing staff, sales and publicity staff have all contributed their advice and expertise, and there are just too many to name individually here. Particular thanks must, however, go to the following two people at Cambridge University Press: Nóirín Burke, whose expertise and vision have guided us throughout the writing of this book, and Martine Walsh, who has steered the project from its beginnings through to publication with consistent insight and thoroughness. We are very grateful to them both. We also owe a great deal to the Cambridge University Press lexicographers who worked with the Cambridge International Corpus to produce the Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs. We drew heavily on the database of this dictionary when selecting verbs to include in this book and when compiling the Mini dictionary at the back of this book.

We have also received invaluable feedback from both teacher and student reviewers. Their comments have had a great influence on the final manuscript and we are very grateful to them. In particular we would like to thank the following teachers, students and institutions from all over the world who reviewed and piloted the material throughout its development:

Kristi Alcouffe, Bonelles, France Margarida Busatto, Sao Paulo, Brazil Philippa Dralet, Paris, France Gill Hamilton, Valencia, Spain Olga Vinogradova, Moscow, Russia Marilyn Woolff, London, UK Kevin Rutherford, Warsaw, Poland Julie Moore, Cambridge, UK Eilwen David, Munich, Germany Ewa Modrzejewska, Gdynia, Poland Yuri Hara, Tokyo, Japan

Finally, as always, we would like to thank our domestic partners and loved ones for their unfailing support while we were taken up with this project.

Michael McCarthy and Felicity O'Dell

Development of this publication has made use of the Cambridge International Corpus (CIC). The CIC is a computerised database of contemporary spoken and written English, which currently stands at 600 million words. It includes British English, American English and other varieties of English. It also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, developed in collaboration with the University of Cambridge ESOL Examinations. Cambridge University Press has built up the CIC to provide evidence about language use that helps to produce better language teaching materials.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher has no reponsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content is or will remain appropriate.

# Using this book

#### Why was this book written?

It was written to help you improve your knowledge of phrasal verbs in English, Phrasal verbs are verbs which have a main verb and a particle which, together, create one meaning (e.g. a plane takes off from the airport; an adult looks after a child). You will come across a great many phrasal verbs when you listen to and read English, and so it is important that you learn about their meanings and about how they are used. You can use this book either with a teacher or for self-study.

There are more than 5,000 phrasal verbs and related noun and adjective forms in use in English. This book focuses just on those phrasal verbs which you need to know for everyday spoken and written communication in English, and it aims to provide the information and practice which will help you understand and use them correctly.

#### How were the phrasal verbs in the book selected?

The approximately 1,000 phrasal verbs and related noun and adjective forms which are presented in this book were all selected from those identified as significant by the CANCODE corpus of spoken English, developed at the University of Nottingham in association with Cambridge University Press and the Cambridge International Corpus of written and spoken English. The phrasal verbs selected are also to be found in the Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs, where additional example sentences and usage notes will also be found. You can search this dictionary online by going to the following website: dictionary.cambridge.org

#### How is the book organised?

The book has 70 two-page units. The left-hand page explains the phrasal verbs that are presented in the unit. You will usually find an explanation of the meaning of each phrasal verb, an example of it in use and, where appropriate, any special notes about its usage. The right-hand page checks that you have understood the information on the left-hand page by giving you a series of exercises that practise the material just presented. The exercises pay particular attention to checking understanding of the phrasal verbs and how they are used, so that you will be able to use them accurately and appropriately.

The units are organised into different sections:

First we start with important information about phrasal verbs in general (Units 1-5): what they are, how their grammar works, and so on. This is an important training section, and we recommend you do these units first.

After the introductory units, there are units on the most common verbs which are used to form phrasal verbs (Units 6-12) and units on the most common particles found in phrasal verbs (Units 13-21).

The rest of the book teaches you the phrasal verbs which are associated with particular concepts (e.g. time), functions (e.g. giving and getting information) and topics (e.g. business, feelings, student life).

The book also has a key to all the exercises so that you can check your answers. At the back of this book you will find a useful Mini dictionary. This provides clear definitions of all the phrasal verbs and related noun and adjective forms that appear in this book. The Mini dictionary also indicates the unit number where you can find a particular phrasal verb.

#### How should I use this book?

It is strongly recommended that you work through Units 1-5 first so that you become familiar with the way phrasal verbs operate and with the terminology that is used in the rest of the book. After that, you may work on the units in any order that suits you.

#### What else do I need in order to work with this book?

You need a notebook or file in which you can write down the phrasal verbs that you study in this book as well as any others that you come across elsewhere.

You also need to have access to a good dictionary. We strongly recommend the Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs as this gives exactly the kind of information that you need to have about phrasal verbs. Your teacher, however, may also be able to recommend other dictionaries that you will find useful.

So, we hope that this book will help you understand and use new or difficult phrasal verbs that crop up (see Unit 44 - Student life: reading and writing) in your reading and listening in English and that, by the time you finish the units, you'll be saying: 'English phrasal verbs? Show me a new one and I'll figure out what it means in seconds!' (see Unit 69 American and Australian phrasal verbs).

# Phrasal verbs: the basics

#### A What are phrasal verbs?

Phrasal verbs are verbs that consist of a verb and a particle.

verb	particle	example	meaning
look	up	You can look up any new words in your dictionary.	You can find the meaning of any new words in your dictionary.
get	through	I tried to phone her but I couldn't get through.	I tried to phone her but I couldn't get a connection.
make	out	I just can't make Jim out at all.	I just can't understand Jim's behaviour.

Particles are small words which you already know as prepositions or adverbs. Here are some of the most common phrasal verb particles: about (a)round at away back down for in into off on out over through to up

#### B What do I need to know about phrasal verbs?

First you need to know the meaning of the whole phrasal verb as a unit. The Mini dictionary in this book will help you. For example, look means to use your eyes and up means the opposite of down, but the phrasal verb look up can have several different meanings:

Look the word up in the dictionary. [look up = search for information in a book/computer] I'll look you up next time I'm in London. [look up = visit someone you have not seen for a long time] Things are looking up. [look up = improve]

Next you need to know the grammar patterns of phrasal verbs, e.g. whether the verb takes an object. The table shows the way the grammar patterns are shown in this book and in many dictionaries. Note that sth means something; sb means someone.

grammar þattern	comment	example
eat out	the verb is used without an object	We were too tired to cook at home so we decided to eat out. [eat in a restaurant]  Not: We decided to eat out a meal.
bring back sth or bring sth back	the verb must have a non-human object	This photograph brings back happy memories. [makes me remember or think about something from the past]  Not:This photograph brings back my sister.
ask out sb or ask sb out	the verb must have a human object	I'd love to ask Sally out. [invite Sally to go to a place like a cinema or a restaurant] Not: I'd love to ask <del>my dog</del> out.
look after sb/sth	the object can be either human or non-human	I'll look after the baby while you're cooking. Will you look after my bike while I'm away?
ring sb back	the object must come before the particle	l'il ring you back later. [phone you again] Not: l'il <del>ring back you.</del>
look after sb/sth	the object must come after the particle	Can you look after the dog while I'm away? Not: Can you look the dog after while I'm away?
drop off sb/sth or drop sb/sth off	the object can be before or after the particle	I dropped off the package at her house. [delivered/left] I dropped the package off at her house.

- 1.1 Underline the twelve phrasal verbs in these sentences.
  - 1 I sent off the order last week but the goods haven't turned up yet.
  - 2 I came across an interesting book in the library. I took down the title. Here it is.
  - 3 We asked some friends around to watch a film, but the video was playing up and it eventually broke down.
  - 4 I brought up this problem at the last meeting. It's really time to sort out the problem.
  - 5 I wish he'd stop messing us about! He's put the meeting off three times and now he wants to call it off altogether.
- 1.2 Match the twelve phrasal verbs from sentences 1–5 in exercise 1.1 above with their meanings from the box below.

cause inconvenience deal with stop working find invite home arrive post cancel write postpone not work properly mention

- 1.3 Decide which of these sentences contain errors. Explain why they are wrong and suggest a correct answer. Use the table in B to help you.
  - 1 That song you just sang brings back memories of my days at college.
  - 2 She looked the children after when their mother was in hospital.
  - 3 I promised to ring my brother back. He called earlier when I was busy.
  - 4 We ate out a wonderful dinner last night.
  - 5 It was a beautiful summer evening so I asked the cat out for a drink.
- Sometimes phrasal verbs are followed by a particular preposition to make three-part verbs. Try to learn these prepositions with the phrasal verbs. Look at these examples of three-part verbs, then complete the sentences below with a preposition from the box. Use a dictionary or the Mini dictionary at the back of this book if necessary.

EXAMPLES I'm looking forward to the weekend.

She's been going out with him for six months now.

with against with on with

- 1 She seems to look down \_\_\_\_\_ people who are less intelligent than her.
- 2 The school decided to do away \_\_\_\_\_ the language lab as no-one was using it.
- 3 I came up \_\_\_\_\_ a serious problem when I tried to save my work onto a disk.
- 4 How can some students get away ........... doing no work and yet pass the exams?
- 5 Her son is so horrible. I don't know how she puts up him.



# Phrasal verbs: what they mean

#### A The most common verbs

Here are the most common verbs that form part of phrasal verbs:

break bring call come cut get give go keep knock look make pass pick pull put run set take turn

Units 6-12 deal with a selection of these verbs which form a large number of useful, everyday phrasal verbs.

#### **B** Meanings

The basic meanings of the verbs in A refer to concrete actions (e.g. break means separate into pieces), but when they are part of phrasal verbs, they often have abstract meanings too. Sometimes the concrete meaning can help you guess the abstract meaning, for example, you can look back to wave goodbye to someone as you leave in a car (concrete meaning – look behind you), or you can look back on your past life (abstract meaning – remember or recall).

verb	concrete meaning	abstract meaning
give	I gave my essay in yesterday. [handed it to the teacher]	Her parents finally gave in and let her go to the party. [agreed to something they had refused before]
get	She got on the bus. [entered]	Jim and Mary don't get on. [don't like each other and are not friendly to each other]
come	Would you like to come round this evening? [come to my home]	He was unconscious for three hours but came round in hospital. [became conscious again]

#### Synonyms of phrasal verbs

A phrasal verb can often be replaced by a single verb with more or less the same meaning. The single-verb synonyms are often, but not always, more formal (see Unit 5, section C).

phrasal verb	single-verb synonym
put off	postpone
take off	remove
turn up	arrive

less formal	more formal	
Let's put off the meeting until Friday.	Let's postpone the meeting until Friday.	
Please take off your shoes when you enter the temple.	Please remove your shoes when you enter the temple.	
Everyone turned up on time for the meeting.	Everyone arrived on time for the meeting.	

TIP

If you know a single-verb synonym of a phrasal verb, write it in your vocabulary notebook, and note whether or not the phrasal verb is more informal.

2.1	Complete these sentences using verbs from the list in A opposite.
	1 The car b
2.2	In which of the sentences in exercise 2.1 above could you put the particle in a different position?
2.3	Decide whether the phrasal verbs in these sentences are concrete or abstract in meaning, by writing C for concrete or A for abstract in the brackets.
	EXAMPLE He looked up (C) and saw a hot-air balloon in the sky.
	<ol> <li>I would never go against ( ) my parents' wishes.</li> <li>Shall I cut out ( ) this ad for the new CD player? We might want to buy one.</li> <li>About five miles into our journey the engine cut out ( ) and we broke down ( ) completely. It was over an hour before the rescue service turned up ( ).</li> <li>Do we need to dress up ( ) tonight or is it informal?</li> <li>I shall never really appreciate what my grandparents went through ( ) during the war.</li> </ol>
2.4	Replace the underlined verbs in these sentences with phrasal verbs made using the verbs an particles from the boxes below. If necessary, use the Mini dictionary at the end of this bool
	make chase brush leave fall up for out aside out
	<ul> <li>They just ignored my complaints; it made me very angry.</li> <li>I believed his story about having lost all his money. How stupid I was!</li> <li>I couldn't understand what he was saying with all the noise.</li> <li>Could you pursue Janet's report? She promised it last week but I haven't seen it yet.</li> <li>If you are phoning from outside the country, omit the first zero in the city code.</li> </ul>
2.5	Use more formal equivalents from the box instead of the phrasal verbs in these sentences. Write the formal verbs in the correct form.
	decline issue organise cancel escape
	<ul> <li>The government have put out a statement condemning the recent protests.</li> <li>The union accepted the new pay deal and called off the strike.</li> <li>The number of people not owning a TV set nowadays has gone down dramatically.</li> <li>There was a disturbance in Blackmoot Prison yesterday and three prisoners got away.</li> <li>Could you see to lunch for our visitors? There will be four of them.</li> </ul>

# Particles in phrasal verbs

This unit looks at the role of particles in phrasal verbs. A particle is either a preposition (e.g. from, to, with) or an adverb (e.g. out, up, about). You can create phrasal verbs by adding different particles to a basic verb.

#### What do particles mean?

In some phrasal verbs the particle has a clear basic meaning. Look at the examples of different particles used with the verb invite. On the right, in speech bubbles, you can see what the original speaker probably said.

Jack invited me out. Let's go out together. Rosie invited me in. Please come in! Jill invited me over. Come to our place. Paul invited me round. Come to my house for dinner or a drink. Mark invited me up. Come upstairs to my flat. Come with us! Susie invited me along. Come back home with me. Bill invited me back.

#### What other meanings can particles have?

Most particles convey a number of different senses. For example, over can have various meanings, including:

- (a) changing position, e.g. in fall over [fall to the ground] or move over [change the place where you are sitting or standing to make room for someone else].
- (b) an idea of thoroughness, e.g. in read over [read throughly] or talk over [discuss something thoroughly before making a decision].

The meanings of particles are looked at in more detail in Units 13–21.

#### Where does the particle go?

With verbs that have an object:

- Sometimes the particle has to go before the object of the verb, e.g. I'm looking for my keys (not: I'm looking my keys for).
- Sometimes it must go after the object, e.g. I have a lot of work on (not: I have on a lot of work).
- Sometimes the particle may go either before or after the object, e.g. The thunder woke up the children or The thunder woke the children up.

Note that if the object is a pronoun (e.g. him, them), then the particle must go after it, e.g. The thunder woke them up (not: The thunder woke up them).

- Look at section A and then answer the questions about these sentences.
  - 1 My brothers were going to the circus and they asked me along. Did the speaker go the circus on her own, with her brothers or do we not know for sure?

2 When I took Di a birthday present, she asked me in but I had to get to my lecture.

Did the speaker go into Di's house?

3 When I saw Mark on the balcony, he asked me up. Who was in a higher position, Mark or the speaker?

- 4 When the Richardsons asked me back after the concert I was happy to accept. Where did the speaker go after the concert?
- 5 My cousin has asked me to go over to his flat this evening. What word could replace over with no change in meaning?
- 3.2 Look at B opposite. Are the phrasal verbs underlined in the sentences below examples of the (a) or the (b) meanings of over?
  - 1 Think it over before you make up your mind what to do next.
  - 2 You may turn over the page now and read the exam questions.
  - 3 It's raining too hard to drive. Pull over to the edge of the road.
  - 4 Look over your answers before the end of the exam.
- 3.3 Look at C opposite. Then read these definitions and decide whether the sentences below are correct or incorrect. If necessary, correct them.

have on has, having, had

have sth on to have an arrangement to do something (never in continuous tenses)

have sb on to persuade someone that something is true when it is not, usually as a joke

have on sth or have sth on if you have clothes or shoes on, you are wearing them (never in continuous tenses; never passive)

1 I have on three important meetings tomorrow.

2 John has an amazing tie on.

- 3 Sue was only having on her sisters when she told them she was planning to become a
- 4 I'm having a lot of work on today.

5 I don't believe you! I'm sure you're having me on.

- 6 Ruth was wearing her new jeans this morning and she had on them yesterday.
- 3.4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1 to / you / for / make room / Can / move / over / your sister?

2 finished / she / over. / Harry / it / to read / When / her essay, / asked / Jill

3 his house / tomorrow. / Jim / back / me / has invited / to

4 when he / Paul / his driving test. / his parents / he'd failed / only having / was / told them / on

5 tomorrow? / What / you / on / do / have

6 the light / in her bedroom, / was / she / at home. / Sue / had / I knew / on / so

# Nouns and adjectives based on phrasal verbs



#### Nouns made from verb + particle

In English we often create nouns from verbs, e.g. to invite I an invitation. In the same way it is sometimes possible to create a noun from a phrasal verb. Look at these examples.

I got ripped off when I phoned that 0877 number [informal: was charged too much].

The call cost five pounds a minute!

Lily: Yes, those numbers are a big rip-off.

Mona: Her son dropped out of college last year. [gave up his course] Ed: Mm. There were a lot of dropouts that year. I wonder why?

Mick: Somebody broke in last night and stole a computer from the school. Jentered by

force to steal something]

Pat: Really? That's the second break-in this year!

#### Rules for the use of verb + particle noun forms

- The plural is formed by adding –s to the particle, not the verb, e.g. break-ins, dropouts, rip-offs (not: breaks in, dropsout, rips-off) An exception is goings-on [strange or amusing events], which is always plural. There was a lot of gossip about the goings-on at the office party.
- Verb + particle noun forms are sometimes written with a hyphen, e.g. break-in, check-in, cover-up; and sometimes without, e.g. dropout, checkout, crackdown. Nouns with -out and -over are usually written as one word, e.g. dropout, lookout, checkout, handout, changeover, leftovers. Nouns with -in, -up and less common particles usually have a hyphen, e.g. lie-in, mix-up, put-down, run-through.
- In pronunciation, the stress is on the verb, not the particle. college DROPouts a BREAK-in at the office

#### Nouns made from particle + verb

Some phrasal verbs have noun forms where the particle is first. The stress in pronunciation is usually on the particle.

phrasal verb	particle + verb noun	example
set out	outset	I knew from the outset that there would be problems. [beginning]
fall down	downfall	The economic crisis caused the downfall of the government. [sudden failure or end]
look on	onlooker	Crowds of onlookers watched as the police arrested the man. [someone who watches an event but doesn't take part]



There are also adjectives which are based on phrasal verbs. Make a note of any you meet. e.g. a broken-down vehicle [vehicle whose engine had stopped working] a breakdown truck [truck which helps drivers who have broken down] blocked-up drains [drains where the water cannot flow properly)

4.4

4.5

1,

Complete the following table. If a noun form does not exist, write 'none' in the table. Use a dictionary if necessary. Decide whether the noun is written with a hyphen or as one word.

phrasal verb	verb + particle noun
show off	show-off
warm up	
hold on	
hide out	
turn over	
tear down	

4.2	Circle the correct	noun forn	in in	these sentences.	Use a	dictionary	if nece:	ssary.
-----	--------------------	-----------	-------	------------------	-------	------------	----------	--------

1 There was a big pile-up / up-pile on the motorway involving five vehicles.

2 The government has announced a series of backeuts / cutbacks in funding for universities in order to save money.

3 When the higher taxes were announced there was a public outcry / cryout.

4 Several standerbys / bystanders did nothing while the thieves robbed him of his cash.

5 The new drug marks a throughbreak / breakthrough in the treatment of cancer.

Complete these sentences with adjective forms of phrasal verbs from the box below.

throwaway	outgoing	bygone	getaway	off-putting
1 The robber	rs abandon	ed their		car in a car park near the airport.
2 I find his n	nanner very	2020602000000000000		. He's so unfriendly.
3 They decid	led to use		pa	aper plates and cups for their party.
				and loves parties.
5 The picture	es of the ste	am trains	were like s	something from aera.
Write down t above are for		e form of	the phrasal	verbs from which the adjectives in exercise 4.3
Match the ser	ntences on	the left wi	th a suitabl	e response on the right.
1 I was look	ing for a w	ay to turn	off	I know, I need to watch my outgoings

the photocopier.

2 Have you heard about the scandal in the office?

3 The economy is not doing so well these days.

4 A database can organise all the information you type into it.

5 You have to consider how much you spend each month.

gs.

Yes, but I don't understand the input. There's the on/off switch.

Yes, there's been a downturn.

Mm, amazing goings-on!

# Metaphor and register



#### Multiple meanings of phrasal verbs

A phrasal verb can have a number of different meanings, e.g.

He got on the bus. Jim and Ian get on really well. get on [entered the bus] [like each other and are friendly]

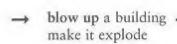
> Shh! I'm trying to get on with my work. [continue doing my work]

Often there is no direct connection between the various meanings and you just have to learn each different meaning of the phrasal verb. The best way to do this is by trying to remember a sentence using the phrasal verb.

#### Literal and metaphorical meaning

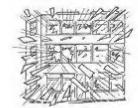
Sometimes the basic meanings of a phrasal verb and the additional meanings are clearly linked. This is because some additional meanings are based on a metaphor or image which has a direct connection with its literal or basic meaning. A metaphor is a way of expressing something by comparing it with something else that has similar characteristics. Here is an example:

LITERAL (BASIC) MEANING blow up a balloon inflate or fill with air



METAPHORICAL MEANING blow up a building → someone blows up suddenly becomes very angry







Sometimes a phrasal verb only exists as a phrasal verb in the metaphorical meaning, but you can guess what it means from the meaning of the basic verb without the particle. For example: These statistics look strange. Have we slipped up somewhere?

Here slip up [make a mistake] clearly comes from slip [fall usually because the floor is wet or the ground is icy].



#### Register

Another important aspect of phrasal verbs is register. Phrasal verbs are typical of spoken English or informal writing, e.g. letters to friends and articles in popular journalism. There are often one-word equivalents, or synonyms, for use in a more formal spoken or written style. For example: miss out a question or omit a question. See section 2C in Unit 2 for other examples.

As with all English vocabulary, there are some different uses from one geographical area to another. For example, British, American and Australian users of English all talk of clearing up a room [putting things away tidily], but only British and Australian speakers would use tidy up as a synonym.

See Unit 69 for more examples of how phrasal verbs differ in North America and Australia.

- 5.1 Match the different meanings a-f of take in with the appropriate sentences 1-6 below.
  - a) make smaller
  - b) allow in through a hole
  - c) deceive

[y]

1.

ct

20

F

- d) give a bed to
- e) include
- f) understand the meaning or importance
- 1 Because so many passengers were stranded at the airport, some local families offered to take them in overnight.
- 2 The news is so shocking I still can't take it in.
- 3 The excursion will take in two of the most beautiful castles in the region.
- 4 Marie has lost weight she's going to have to take in a lot of her clothes.
- 5 Rob was totally dishonest but he was so charming that I was taken in by him.
- 6 We'd better return to the shore at once the boat seems to be taking in water.
- 5.2 These pairs of sentences show phrasal verbs which can be used in both literal and metaphorical ways. Explain the two meanings and the connection between them.
  - 1 a) I stepped in a puddle of water and my feet are soaking now.
    - b) She stepped in to stop the argument from becoming more serious.
  - 2 a) This programme is rubbish. I wish you'd switch off the TV.
    - b) The lecture was so boring that I switched off.
  - 3 a) There's a hole in my bag. I think my pen must have dropped out.
    - b) He dropped out of college and became a mechanic.
  - 4 a) We tied the boxes down on the roof of the car.
    - b) Mark dreams of travelling but he feels tied down by his family and work responsibilities.
- Use your knowledge of the basic verb in the underlined phrasal verbs as well as the context of the sentence in order to work out the meanings of the phrasal verbs.
  - 1 What are you driving at? I wish you would say exactly what you mean!
  - 2 The teacher did all she could to drum the vocabulary into her pupils before the exam.
  - 3 The old education system used to <u>cream off</u> the best pupils and teach them in separate
  - 4 The noise of the children's music completely drowned out the television.
- 5.4 Write a one-word formal equivalent for each of the underlined phrasal verbs.

As the rain didn't let up, the football game was called off. So the team got down to discussing its strategy for the next match instead. We didn't get out of the clubhouse until the cleaners turned up in the evening.



If you encounter a phrasal verb that you thought you knew but it does not seem to make sense, use other clues in the context to work out what the meaning might be. It may be quite different from the meaning that you already knew.

## Come expressing an idea of movement or change of state

phrasal verb	meaning	example  Not many people bought tickets for the concert in advance, but quite a few came along and bought tickets at the door.		
come along	arrive at a place			
come apart	separate into pieces	The antique picture frame just came apart in my hands.		
come around or come round	become conscious again	A nurse was with me when I came round after the operation.		
come out disappear or become less strong (of dirt or colour on clothing/material)		Let your shirt soak overnight and the stain will probably come out.		
come out	become public knowledge after it has been kept secret (of the truth)	If this story comes out about the Prime Minister, he'll have to resign.		
come out	be given to people (of results or information)	When do your exam results come out?		
come out	leave after a period in a place (of hospital/prison)	Jane's coming out of hospital at the weekend. She's much better now.		

#### Come expressing an idea of happen

I was planning to arrange a surprise holiday for her birthday, but I'm not sure it's going to come off. [happen successfully or as planned]

I've had to organise the school fair again this year - I'm not quite sure how that came about. [happened, especially something which is not planned]

Dennis: Will you tell your boss about your plans to stand for the local council? Norma: Only if the subject comes up in conversation. I nearly told him at work this morning, but then something came up<sup>2</sup> and we had to deal with it straightaway. Mind you, I don't know if a place on the council is going to come up3 for a while yet, so perhaps I'll wait.

- is mentioned or discussed
- <sup>2</sup> happened unexpectedly, usually a problem or difficult situation
- 3 become available

#### Other meanings of come

I am doing a research project for my degree on the psychology of ageing, but I've come up against a few problems. I came across2 someone who's done an almost identical study, so I've got to come to3 a decision: do I want to continue with it or not? I guess in the end my decision will come down to4 what my professor recommends.

- encountered or had to deal with (a difficult situation)
- <sup>2</sup> discovered (or met) by chance
- 3 make (a decision about something)
- 4 depend mostly on or be influenced most by

- **6.1** Complete these sentences with a particle from A opposite. 1 Do you have any glue? The cover of my address book is coming \_\_\_\_\_ and I want to stick it together again. 2 I spilt some orange juice on the tablecloth. Do you think it will come \_\_\_\_\_\_ if I put it in the washing machine? 3 The last thing I remember was feeling very dizzy. The next thing I knew, I came in hospital and a doctor was standing by my bed. 4 The government is going to release a report on traffic congestion. I wonder when it's coming ...... 5 We were just chatting at the corner when Jim Gore came with his girlfriend. 7 Some very shocking facts have come about government corruption, thanks to an investigation by a national newspaper. 6.2 Use a phrasal verb from the opposite page to complete these dialogues. 1 Anne: We lost everybody's e-mail address and had to start all over again. Ken: Really? How did that Anne: Oh, it was some computer virus. 2 Rick: David keeps saying he's going to sail around the world. Huh! Do you think it will ever Ivan: Rick: Probably not. He's such a dreamer. 3 Brian: We'll let you know what we decide. We'll phone you. Fran: When do you think you'll ? Brian: Probably at the meeting on Friday. 4 Olga: I thought you were coming to the dinner party last night. Ulla: Yes, I was intending to, but right at the last minute something Oh, I see. Well, you must come next time. Olga:
- 6.3 Rewrite the underlined words in these horoscopes, using phrasal verbs with come.

SCORPIO \*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\* You may have to deal with a few problems at work today, but don't worry, they're only temporary, and a new job opportunity will arise which could change your life. The name of an old friend is mentioned in conversation, bringing back powerful memories.



TAURUS \*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\* You will meet someone by pure chance who seems to share the same world view as you, but be careful, they are not what they seem to be. Don't forget that, in the end, true love is mainly about finding someone you can trust.



It.

e

Horoscopes are often good places to find everyday, informal phrasal verbs. Read your horoscope regularly in an English newspaper or magazine, even if you don't believe it, and note down any phrasal verbs.

## Learning phrasal verbs in pairs associated with a context

phrasal verbs	meaning	example	
get together (often + with)	If two or more people get together, they meet in order to do something or spend time together.	It's nice to get together with people you get on with.	
get on (often + with)	If two or more people get on, they like each other and are friendly to each other.		
get on (often + with) get behind (often + with)	If you get behind with work or with payments, you have not done as much work or paid as much as you should by a particular time.	I must get on with my work. I got behind because I spent too much time on the Internet.	
get sth over with  do and complete something difficult or unpleasant that must be done  get away  leave a place or person, often when the situation makes it difficult for you to do so		Let's get this meeting over with, or else we'll never get away before the rush hour and it will take ages to get home.	
can't/couldn't get over sth	be very surprised or shocked that something has happened or that something is true	I can't get over how she manages to get away with doing so little work. It's obvious to everyone, but the boss never seems to notice.	
get away with sth/doing sth	succeed in not being criticised or punished for something wrong that you have done		

#### More phrasal verbs with get

How do you manage to survive without a job? Gerry:

Oh, I get by with a bit of help from my parents. [have just enough money to pay Kimberly:

for the things I need, but nothing more]

Lauren: The problem is that the regulations don't allow us to use next year's budget.

Oh, don't worry. We'll get around/round it somehow. [find a way of dealing Juliet:

with or avoiding a problem]

Yanis: Have you rung the travel agent's yet to confirm our bookings?

Ronan: Sorry, I haven't got around/round to it yet, but I'll do it after lunch, I promise.

[do something that you have intended to do for a long time]

Polly: I really think you ought to apologise to you-know-who about you-know-what.

Ivan: I'm sorry, I don't know what you're getting at. Who? What? [If you ask someone

what they are getting at, you are asking them what they mean, usually because

they have said something indirectly.]

Ellen: Do you think I can get away with not using any handouts in my lecture? [do

something successfully even though it is not the best way of doing it]

Lou: Yes, the students just throw them away anyway.

7.1	Choose the correct particle to complete these	sentences.		
	the evening?	with so you can enjoy the rest of		
	a) around b) over c) by d) :			
	2 As soon as Sue and I met, we knew we we	re going to get well.		
	a) round b) at c) on d) up			
	3 I just can't come out with you tonight as I a) up b) over c) away d) be	ve got so with my work.		
	4 Why does Rita always get			
	a) by b) away c) on d) over	with attiving late. It doesn't seem late.		
	5 I'm going to have to get			
	a) round b) over c) away d)			
	6 I hope you'll be able to get	from work at a reasonable time tonight.		
	a) away b) behind c) at d) of Your mother couldn't get	the cost of restaurants in London		
	a) up b) round c) by d) ove	r Cost of restaurants in London.		
7.2	Match each question on the left with the mos			
	1 How do you and Joe get on?	I manage somehow, though it isn't easy.		
	2 What exactly are you getting at?	I just wasn't organised enough.		
	3 How do you get by on a student grant?	Sure, that would be nice.		
	4 How did you get so behind?	I certainly hope so.		
	5 When are you going to get round to it? 6 Shall we get together this evening?	Let me put it another way for you.  We're great friends.		
	7 Will you manage to get away soon?	Soon, I promise.		
7.3	Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences, using a phrasal verb from the opposite pag Make any other necessary changes.			
	1 I've been planning to sort out my files but	I haven't found time to do it yet.		
	2 1 can't believe how much money they spen			
	3 Don't try to travel without paying your train fare – an inspector might come on and war to see your ticket.			
	4 The teachers in the school often meet after work on Fridays in a café near the school.			
	5 They <u>avoided</u> the problem of offending anyone and just invited all their friends to the wedding.			
	6 I usually find it quite hard to understand what Professor Mactoft is trying to say in his			
	lectures.			
	7 I hope no-one will mind if I don't send any			
	8 Emily has not done nearly as much work of	on her thesis as she should have done by now.		

ay

one

Learning verbs in pairs associated with a particular context can help you remember them. Look again at all the phrasal verbs on the opposite page. Try to make different pairs and write them in sentences putting them in context, as in section A.

#### Amelia's story

Amelia has been going through! a difficult time at work, so she decided to cheer herself up by going in for 2 a competition. The prize was a luxury holiday in the Caribbean. Amelia has had to go without3 a holiday for several years now, so she really wanted to win. The competition was to write a story beginning 'Suddenly the lights went out 4....' The problem was that Amelia could not think of an idea for her story.

'How can I go about getting a good idea?', she asked me. 'It must be something special so that the judges go for my story over all the others.' I suggested she went to the library to go through 7 some books of short stories — she might get some ideas there. So she went off<sup>8</sup> to see what she could find.

She soon found some great stories. She read one and then another and she went on reading all afternoon. Then she noticed a strange smell and suddenly the lights went out. She looked up and saw that the library was on fire. Of course, that gave her the idea for her story. I hope she wins,

- experiencing an unpleasant or difficult situation
- <sup>2</sup> doing or competing in
- 3 not have something which you usually have
- 4 stopped giving light
- 5 start to do or deal with something

- 6 choose
- <sup>7</sup> examine the contents of something carefully
- <sup>8</sup> left a place to go to somewhere else
- 9 continued

## Some more phrasal verbs with go

phrasal verb	meaning	example
go along with sth/sb	support an idea, or agree with someone's opinion	Whatever you say, Maggie will go along with you.
go on	continue to exist or happen	It went on raining all day.
go on	happen	There's a police car outside the shop.  Do you know what's going on?
go through with	do something unpleasant or difficult which you planned or promised to do	I don't want to do the exam now but I'd better go through with it.
go together	if two types of thing or people go together, they are usually found with each other	A bad cough and a sore throat often go together.

Many of the very common English phrasal verbs, for example the ones in Units 6-12, have several different meanings when combined with one particle. There are a few different meanings on this page for go on and go through; however there are other possible meanings for both of these verb and particle combinations. Remember this if you meet a phrasal verb in a new or unusual context because it may have quite a different meaning there from one you are more familiar with.

Complete the text below using the correct particles from the phrasal verbs in A opposite.

I was going	ound one from my friend
Nancy. After high school she had gone(2) to train as	
in Africa. She had to go	before she qualified. Life
in Africa was not as comfortable as it was in our hometown, and there	were many things she
had to go(4) which the rest of us think of as necessit	ies in our daily lives.
But despite all the hardships, she went(5) working and	helping people less
fortunate than herself. I admire her so much, I wondered how I might	
making contact with her again, as I have no idea where she is living no	OW.

- 8.2 Rewrite these sentences using phrasal verbs with go so that they keep the same meaning.
  - 1 I'm thinking of competing in the New York Marathon next year.
  - 2 There were some difficult times in my father's life.
  - 3 Unemployment and high crime levels often exist side by side.
  - 4 He decided to undergo the operation even though there were risks.
  - 5 I refused to support their decision to close the youth club.
  - 6 I didn't realise how late it was and I didn't stop studying till after midnight.
  - 7 We had to survive with no hot water for 24 hours while they were repairing the pipes.
  - 8 Do you think I should try the advanced level exam? It might be too difficult.
  - 9 She just left without saying goodbye. I wonder if I offended her?
  - 10 What was happening in the staffroom at lunchtime? I heard someone shouting.
- In these sentences, some of the phrasal verbs from the opposite page are used with new meanings. Choose the correct paraphrase. Use a dictionary if necessary.
  - 1 We had to throw the fish away as it had gone off.
    - a) Someone had switched off the oven.
    - b) The fish had become bad because we kept it too long.
    - c) The fish had fallen off the table on to the floor.
  - 2 I wish you wouldn't go on about your problems all the time! I have problems too, you know!
    - a) I wish you wouldn't think obsessively.
    - b) I wish you wouldn't be very secretive.
    - c) I wish you wouldn't talk constantly.
  - 3 She's been going about telling everyone I want to marry her.
    - a) She's been thinking of telling everyone.
    - b) She's on the point of telling everyone.
    - c) She has told everyone.
  - 4 Ask her to dance with you. Go on!
    - a) Continue doing what you're doing.
    - b) Step on to the dance floor.
    - c) Do it now, don't hesitate.



Suddenly the light went out leaving George and Mildred in complete darkness.

The verb go on has a noun and an adjective associated with it: goings-on (noun) and ongoing (adjective). Look in a good dictionary to find out how they are used and make a sentence with each one in your vocabulary notebook.

#### Phrasal verbs where look keeps aspects of its basic meaning

The idea of seeing, observing or noticing something is included in many phrasal verbs with look.

Tim: Did you manage to read the report? Well, I looked at it, but I haven't read it Iris: properly. |read it quickly and not very carefully]

Tim: I'd like you to read it if you could. We need to look at the conclusions and make some decisions, [examine or consider something carefully in order to

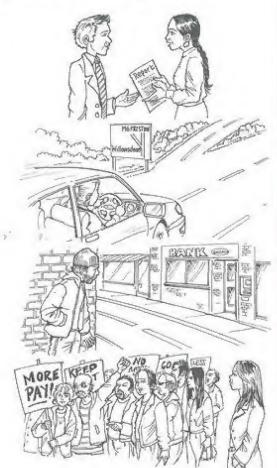
Rita: How do I get to your village coming from the city?

make a decision about it]

Bob: When you're on the motorway, look out for a sign saying 'Willowsdean'. That's where you turn off. [carefully watch the things around you so that you will notice a particular thing]

The bank robbers had a lookout standing at the street corner to warn them if the police came. [noun: a person who is watching for danger

I wasn't in the demonstration. I was just an onlooker. Inoun: someone who watches an activity or event without becoming involved in it; from the phrasal verb with the same meaning look on



#### Phrasal verbs where look has more abstract meanings

If you	then you
look up to sb	respect and admire them
look down on sb/sth	think that someone or something is less important than you, or that something is not good enough quality for you to use
look after sb/sth	take care of someone or something by doing what is needed to keep someone or something well or in good condition
look ahead	think about what will happen in the future and plan for those events
look around/round	try to find something you want (e.g. a job) by asking different people or by looking in different places
look forward to sth/doing sth	feel pleased and excited about something that is going to happen

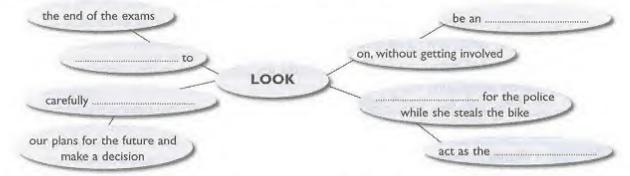
#### 9.1 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 If you are looking around for a new job, you are ...
  - a) applying for a new job b) trying to find a new job
  - c) worried about your new job
- 2 If you look out for someone who is picking you up in their car, you ...
  - a) carefully avoid getting hit by their car b) watch the road and warn them of danger
  - c) watch for their car so you will see them when they arrive
- 3 If you look down on cheap restaurants, you ...
  - a) consider them not good enough for you b) see them from the top windows of your house or flat c) always consider them before going to a dearer one
- 4 If you look after someone's cat while they are away, you ...
  - a) follow the cat everywhere b) search for it because it is lost
  - c) care for it and give it what it needs
- 5 If you look up to your English teacher, you ...
  - a) stand up when you speak to him or her b) admire and respect him or her
  - c) raise your head because he or she is taller than you

#### 9.2 Complete these sentences with a suitable particle.

- 1 I'm really looking ...... to seeing my cousins again next week.
- 2 She's looking \_\_\_\_\_\_ for a new English course. She's not very satisfied with the one she's following at the moment.
- 4 We have to look \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the time when our child will be old enough to go to university.
- 5 Lord Muck is a terrible snob. He looks .................... on most other people.
- 6 I didn't have time to read the newspaper yesterday. I only looked \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ it very quickly.

#### 9.3 Complete the diagram, using words from the opposite page.



# Here are some more phrasal verbs based on *look*. Read each sentence and try to guess the meaning of the phrasal verb. Use a dictionary if necessary.

- 1 You could look up the new words in a dictionary.
- 2 When I was in Boston on business last week I looked up an old friend.
- 3 After a long recession the economic situation is looking up.
- 4 I looked over the report on the way to the meeting.
- 5 I looked through the report and scribbled down a few notes.
- 6 Detectives are looking into the murder.

or

#### Make + the particles for, out and up

for somewhere = go in out something/someone = be up something = form the the direction of able to see or hear something whole of something or someone with difficulty MAKE up something (or make out someone (or make someone something up) = invent. out) = understand why someone something, e.g. a story behaves as they do or a game up something (or make something out something (or make something out) up) = say or write something that = understand something, especially why is not true in order to deceive something has happened

#### Examples:

Can you make out the words of this song?

When we got to the park, the children made for the swings while I sat on a bench.

Sally didn't want to go to the concert, so she made up an excuse about being ill.

The children loved Uncle Bob because he was so good at making up new games.

Over 30% of the university population is made up of overseas students.

Notice how make out with the following three meanings is usually used with can or could in a negative sentence and is not usually used in the passive.

I couldn't make out a word he was saying.

Jack is behaving very strangely at the moment. I just can't make him out.

I can't make out why my computer won't let me save this document.

You probably already know that the noun make-up can mean cosmetics, e.g.

My sister never goes out without any make-up on, but I only wear it for special occasions.

However, make-up, from the verb make up, can also mean the combination of things which form something, e.g.

The class has an interesting make-up, with students from three continents and twelve different countries.

#### Make + two particles

phrasal verb	meaning	example
make up for sth	provide something good in order to make a bad situation better	The wonderful food in the restaurant made up for the rather uncomfortable seats.
make it up to sb	do something good for someone who you have done something bad to in the past, or to someone who has done something good for you	I forgot Teresa's birthday yesterday so I'll have to take her somewhere nice to make it up to her.

ne ng

one one

ut)

in

ns.

:h

10.1 Read these comments by different people and then answer the questions below by writing the correct name in the box.

Melanie

I just can't make out what she's saying, can you?

Melanie

I just can't make him out at all, can you?

Lars

I treated her a bit insensitively at the party so I gave her a present to make up for it.

Pete

I made up a story about losing my wallet, so he paid the drinks bill for me.

Jane

I loved the trip. The beautiful scenery made up for the awful roads.

1 Who invented something that was not true?

2 Who said something good had made a bad experience less bad?

- 3 Who has difficulty hearing something?
- 4 Who wanted to restore a damaged relationship?
- 5 Who can't understand someone's behaviour?

#### 10.2 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.

- 1 As soon as we had checked in at the hotel, we made straight at the beach.
- 2 She made out some story about the bus being late, but I'm sure she just overslept.
- 3 Why the camera was not working properly could not be made out by anybody.
- 4 Harry is very good at making over stories for the children; they love his tales.



The make-up of the new cabinet clearly reflected the extreme wing of the party.

- 5 Can you make what that white thing on the horizon is out?
- 6 The report is made of three sections up.

FOLLOW

Use a good dictionary or search the Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs online at dictionary.cambridge.org to see how many more phrasal verbs with make you can find. Write down three that you particularly want to remember in example sentences.



#### A Put verbs related to physical actions

With all these phrasal verbs the particle can come either before or after the object, e.g. to put on a CD or to put a CD on.

We spent yesterday putting in a new washing machine. [fixing new equipment or a new system in the correct place]

Could you put the air conditioning on, please? It's so hot in here. [make a device work by pressing a switch]

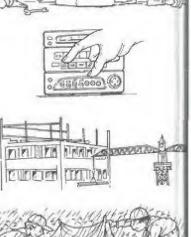
I don't think you've heard this CD. I'll put it on. [put something that sounds or pictures are recorded onto into a machine so that you can hear or see the recording]

Would you mind putting that light out? It's shining directly onto my computer screen.

[making a light stop shining by pressing a switch]

I see they're putting up a new block of flats near the park. [building a structure]

It poured with rain while we tried to put our tent up. [open something that is folded or rolled up so that it is ready to use]



#### B Put verbs and time

Dave: Jim, I'm sorry to have to put you off again, but I'm just too busy to see you today [tell someone you can't see them or do something for them till a later time].

Could we put our meeting back till next week? [change the date or time of an event so that it happens later than planned]

Jim: Sure. We can put it off until next Monday. [decide or arrange to do something at a later time]

Pilot: Ladies and gentlemen, we're now coming in to land at Mexico City. You may want to put your watches forward; the local time is 8.35 a.m. [make a watch or clock show an earlier time]

In Britain, around the last weekend in October, all clocks are put back one hour. [make a watch or clock show an earlier time]

## Put verbs and relations with other people

If you	then
are put out	you are annoyed, often because of something that someone has done or said to you
put up with sb/sth	you accept unpleasant behaviour or an unpleasant situation, even though you do not like it
put sb on to/onto sth/sb	you tell them about something or someone that could help them, often something or someone they did not know about before

- 11.1 Correct any mistakes in these sentences. If there are no mistakes, write correct at the end of the sentence.
  - 1 I like sleeping in tents but I don't like putting up them.
  - 2 Put that CD on that you bought yesterday. I'd like to hear it.
  - 3 We put last week in a new dishwasher. It's wonderful.
  - 4 Will you put on the TV? I want to watch the tennis.
  - 5 That light is too strong. Shall we put out it?
- 11.2 Complete the text using particles from the opposite page.

'I don't know how Harry puts (1) with his boss. He works so hard but his
boss even gets him to put the lights(2) for him when it starts to get dark,
and it's always Harry who has to put(3) new computer equipment. His boss
never thinks twice about putting him(4) when they've arranged a meeting.
I know Harry feels put
we can to put him

11.3 Rewrite these sentences so that the actions are the opposite of the ones underlined. Use phrasal verbs from the opposite page and make any other necessary changes so that the sentences make sense.

EXAMPLE Please turn the radio off now. I'm trying to sleep.

Please put the radio on now. There's a programme I'd like to listen to.

- 1 Could you switch the light on please. I can't see to read.
- 2 They're pulling down those old buildings near the railway station.
- 3 The Boy Scouts took their tent down very quickly and loaded it into their bus.
- 4 Could we possibly bring our meeting forward to 10 o'clock?
- 5 When we moved into our new house we decided to remove an old, rather ugly fireplace.
- 6 Can you turn that CD off, please. I can't concentrate on my work.
- Here are some more phrasal verbs based on *put*. Match the phrasal verbs in the sentences 1-5 with the definitions a-e. Use a dictionary if necessary.
  - 1 Josie is very good at putting her ideas across.
  - 2 Anyone who is smoking must put their cigarettes out immediately.
  - 3 I'm not putting that on. I'd look ridiculous in it!
  - 4 The secretary's put up some information about excursions. Have you seen it?
  - 5 The plane was due to put down in Los Angeles at 3.50 a.m., but was diverted to San Francisco at the last minute.
  - a) stick or fasten a piece of paper to something, e.g. a wall, so that it can be seen
  - b) express in such a way that others can understand easily
  - c) land

int

a

nt

- d) put a piece of clothing on your body
- e) extinguish or stop something burning

## Take

#### Take in a physical sense

If you take apart something or take something apart you separate it into its different parts. Rod loves taking clocks apart, but he never manages to put them together again.

If you take back something or take something back, you return it to the person or organisation that you bought or borrowed it from.

When you go into town to take back your library books could you also take these trousers back to the shop for me - they're too small.

If you take aside somebody or take somebody aside, you separate someone from a group of people so that you can speak to them privately.

My boss took me aside at the Christmas party and told me he was going to give me a promotion in the New Year.

If you take off, you suddenly leave a place, without telling anyone where you are going. Most people stayed at the party until quite late, but Rose took off early for some reason.

#### B

#### Take in an abstract sense

phrasal verb	meaning	example
take up sth or take sth up	start doing a particular job or activity	My son has recently taken up stamp collecting as a hobby.
take off sth or take sth off (sth)	subtract a particular amount from a total	The shop assistant took off ten per cent because the item was damaged.
take away sth or take sth away	subtract a first number from a second number	If you take II away from 33, you're left with 22.
take back sth or take sth back	admit that something you said was wrong	I shouldn't have called you lazy – I take it back.
take in sth or take sth in	look at something carefully noticing all the details	He showed us a photo of his house, but I was so tired that I didn't really take it in.

## Other senses of take

Lucy has started swimming regularly. She has taken out a year's membership at a local sports club and has taken to<sup>2</sup> going to the swimming pool every lunch hour. She is so taken up with3 her swimming that she wouldn't even take me up on4 my offer to buy her lunch in the best restaurant in town. The exercise certainly takes it out of 5 her - she is too exhausted to go anywhere in the evenings.

- subscribed to or registered for something officially

<sup>2</sup> started to do something often

5 makes her feel very tired

<sup>3</sup> very busy doing something



Because the most common verbs, e.g. take, get, make, have so many different phrasal verbs with different meanings associated with them, it is useful to group the meanings, as in the sections of this unit. Try to do this for other common verbs and their phrasal verbs as you meet new ones and try to record an example sentence in your vocabulary notebook to help you remember them.

S.

sers

of

n.

it

in sted

ent to 12.1 Each line of this text contains a phrasal verb with take, but some of them are used incorrectly. If a line has a correct phrasal verb, tick the box. If the line is incorrect, cross out the incorrect word and write the correct word in the box.

EXAMPLE The watch was broken so I took it off to the shop.

back

I bought a new jacket but it had a mark on it so I took it back.

The shop assistant took me offside and told me that

if I was prepared to keep the jacket she would take away ten per cent. I didn't really take in what she was saying at

first, but once I understood, I decided to take her over on the offer.

12.2 Use a phrasal verb from the opposite page to complete these dialogues.

1 Roy: I find it very offensive that you called Ciaran an idiot.
Kim: OK, OK. Sorry, I shouldn't have said it. I

2 Matt: Fiona seems really keen on her tennis these days.

Clare: Yes, she's really \_\_\_\_\_ it. She's so \_\_\_\_\_ with it

that she's stopped going to the swimming pool.

3 Jim: I tried to clean the inside of my computer and I've put all the bits back but I

have two bits left over.

Len: Well, I'm not surprised! I warned you not to \_\_\_\_\_ in the first

place.

4 Brian: I get so bored since I retired from my job.

Miriam: Well, why don't you \_\_\_\_\_ golf?

5 Ali: What's this figure here, £30?

Paul: It's what you get when you \_\_\_\_\_£15

from £45.

6 Anoma: You look exhausted these days.

Terry: Yes, teaching 28 hours a week really \_\_\_\_\_ me.

7 Hilary: Geoff left very suddenly, didn't he?

Kersty: Yes, he just without even saying goodbye.



To the surprise of everyone at the party, Geoff suddenly took off without saying goodbye.

Read this text about someone complaining about having to do housework. Notice how the particle up sometimes expresses the idea of completing or totally finishing something.

> I spent all morning yesterday clearing up my study. There were books and papers everywhere. Then I had to sweep up2 the rubbish and dead leaves on the terrace. After that I tried to tidy up3 my bedroom, There were dirty clothes all jumbled up4 in a pile on the floor. I had to hang up5 four jackets and several pairs of trousers I'd left lying on chairs. That took me an hour. Then I discovered the washbasin was clogged up6 in the bathroom, so I had to clear that. By that time I'd used up7 all my energy and I was too tired to do anything, so I just fell asleep on the sofa.

- making a place tidy and clean, especially by putting things where they usually belong
- <sup>2</sup> remove rubbish or dirt, usually from the floor, using a brush
- 3 make a room or a group of things tidy by putting things in the correct place
- 4 (adjective) mixed together in an untidy way (from the verb jumble up)
- 5 hang something, especially clothes, on a hook
- 6 blocked
- finished a supply of something

Note how the particle up can be used for emphasis:

Eat up your vegetables, children! Drink up your juice! Paul's used up all the milk. These three sentences could be written without up, but using up emphasises the meaning of 'finish it all or completely'.

Read this live Internet chat between Robert and Gemma.

- G: Hi Rob, are you there?
- R: Hi Gemma, what's new?
- G: My sister Val showed up at last. She's been promising to come for weeks.
- R: Great :-)
- G: Yeah, she turned up2 yesterday evening.
- R: What's she doing these days?
- G: She's just opened up3 a restaurant serving exotic food from different countries. It's in that shopping mall in Dunston, you know.
- R: Wow! That's original. It'll certainly liven Dunston up4 a bit, it's such a boring place. How did she think of that?
- G: Oh, she's always full of new ideas.
- R: So, what's the set up<sup>5</sup>? Is she the only person involved?
- G: No, she has a business partner and they divide up6 the work - and the profits!
- R: Sounds like fun. :-)
- G: Yeah, but she says it's hard work. She spends half the day chopping up7 food and cleaning the kitchen.
- Mm. Maybe we're better off working in office jobs ...

- arrived, especially at a place where people were expecting her
- 2 arrived
- 3 started a new shop or business
- 4 make something more interesting and exciting
- 5 (noun) the way that something is arranged (from the verb set up)
- 6 separate something into smaller parts or groups
- 7 cutting something, especially food, into small pieces

ic

3d

100k

of

ce

ng

ness

hing

lly

- 13.1 Look at the picture and answer the questions.
  - 1 What does the woman need to tidy up
  - 2 What does she need to sweep up?
  - 3 What must she hang up?
  - 4 What are jumbled up on the floor?
  - 5 How might she feel when she has cleared everything up?



13.2 Choose the best verb from B to fill the gaps in this e-mail. Use a different verb in each gap and write it in the correct form.

Hi, Gina!	-
How are things with you? Hope all's well. Has your cousin	esides d to
let's try out that new club that's(5) up in Market Street.  Love, Tanya	

- 13.3 Choose the correct word to complete these sentences. Sometimes there is more than one possible answer.
  - 1 Sam up too much time on the first exam question and didn't finish the paper.
    - a) clogged
- b) used
- c) divided
- d) showed

2 Guess who ...

a) showed

- b) livened
- ..... up at midnight last night! c) hung
  - d) turned
- 3 Please could you ..... ..... up these onions for me?
  - a) divide
- b) turn
- c) chop
- d) clog
- 4 Jill spent ages ..... up the lounge.
- a) clearing

- b) tidying c) hanging d) turning
- 5 A new supermarket is ...... up near us next month. a) turning c) opening
- b) showing

d) hanging

- 6 The bath is .....

b) divided

... up with hair. It's disgusting!

c) cleared

- a) jumbled b) swept c) chopped d) clogged 7 Could you ..... ..... up the leaves on the front steps, please?
  - a) hang
- b) clear
- c) use
- d) sweep
- 8 When the old man died, his things were ....

a) chopped

- d) used
- 13.4 In some of the phrasal verbs in A and B opposite the verb can be used on its own without the particle up to make a grammatical sentence with more or less the same meaning.
  - 1 In which cases could the up be left out?
  - 2 In the sentences where the particle is not essential what extra meanings, if any, do you think the up adds?

..... up among his children.

#### Out meaning not in

Many phrasal verbs with out have an association with the basic meaning of out, i.e. not in.

phrasal verb	meaning	example
leave out sth or leave sth out	not include something or someone	For homework do exercise 8 but leave out number 10.
cut out sth or cut sth out	remove by cutting, usually from paper or cloth	She cut some interesting articles out of the newspaper for us.
show out sb or show sb out	lead a visitor who is leaving to the door of a room or building	Let me <b>show</b> you <b>out</b> – it's quite hard to find the exit from here.
see out sb or see sb out	go with someone to the door of a room or building when they are leaving	Don't worry, I can see myself out.
let out sb/sth or let sb/sth out	allow a person or animal to leave, usually by opening a locked or closed door	The door will be locked but the receptionist will let you out.
lock out sb or lock sb out	prevent someone from entering a building by locking the door	I forgot my keys and was locked out of my own house!
lock yourself out	accidentally prevent yourself from getting into a building by leaving the keys inside when you shut the door	I've locked myself out so often that I've hidden a spare key in the garden now.

#### Out meaning to the end or completely

Sometimes out in phrasal verbs gives an idea of completing or doing something to the end.

I sorted out my room on Sunday. [arranged things that were untidy]

I cleared out [made tidy by removing unwanted things] all my wardrobes and threw away all my worn out shoes [adjective: used so much that they had become damaged, from the verb wear out].

Unfortunately, I'd run out of furniture polish, so I couldn't do any polishing, but I'll do that next weekend. [there was none left because it had all been used]

#### Other uses of out

Here are some other phrasal verbs which use out.

He spread out the photos on the table so everyone could see them. [arranged on a flat surface]

The band has a new album coming out next month. [available for people to buy]

Madam, would you like to try out the bike before deciding whether to buy it? [test to find out if it works or decide whether you like it]

My husband's business is so busy at the moment that I'm helping out in the office. [helping, especially by doing work or giving money

I always feel I lost out because I never learnt a musical instrument as a child. [did not have an advantage that others had]

n.

t of

rd

t of

I've

d.

y all rb

hat

face]

id

ing,

Ne

14	1.1	Rewrite these sentences using phrasal verbs from A.
		1 I'll take you down to the exit, if you like.
		2 For some reason my name was omitted from the guest list. 3 My keys are inside the car and I can't get into it.
		4 He can find his own way to the exit - there's no need to take him there.
		5 She collected pictures of her pop idol from the music magazines.
		6 The security guard opened the gate so we could leave the building site.
14	1.2	Complete these sentences using phrasal verbs. Write the verbs in the correct form.
		1 I out by not learning a foreign language at school. I meet so many
		people I just can't communicate with.
		2 Would you like to out my tennis racket? It's a new model.
		3 Our business at the shop is growing so fast we need someone to out at weekends.
		4 I got out yesterday. I left home without my keys and my flatmate had
		gone away for the day.
		5 I out a job advertisement from the paper last night and now I don't
		know where I put it. 6 Rana: Right, Miles, I'm leaving now.
		Miles: I'll come with you andyou out. Our new office building is a
		bit complicated.
		Rana: Oh, it's OK, I can myself out.
		Miles: Well, actually you can't. They lock the street door at 6 p.m. so I'll have to come
		and you out.
1	4.3	Write a sentence about each picture using phrasal verbs from this unit.
		1 2 3
		TO T
		ABCDFG
		DVD Scor
		Avoilable on DVD 500n
1	4.4	Choose which sentence from a-e below best fits the gaps 1-5 in the text.
	4.4	I wanted to find out more about the history of my town for a college project. (1) So I decided
		to go to the local library. I got out some books, newspapers and some old maps which they
		had. (2) I decided to make a pile of things to photocopy. (3) There was a huge amount or
		material, too much in fact. (4) So I hurried and just chose the most important things to copy
		in the time I had left. (5) I will go back and do them some other time.

a) So I sorted out the most important items.

e) I spread them all out on a big table.

b) Unfortunately, I had to leave out the very big maps.

d) Time was running out; the library closed at 4 p.m.

c) I'd cut out some articles from the local paper but I needed more information.

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 33

### Leaving places

Off sometimes combines with verbs to express the idea of something or someone leaving a place.



example	meaning
The space shuttle will lift off at 09.00 hours.	leave the ground (of a spacecraft or aircraft)
We should head off at about six tomorrow.	start a journey or leave a place
I've sent off that letter you wrote to the newspaper.	sent a letter, document, or parcel by post
Let's try and slip off before the meeting finishes and go for a drink.	leave a place quietly so that other people do not notice you going
Why did he just clear off without saying goodbye? Clear off! This is private property.	leave a place quickly (informal)

### Ending or changing state

Off sometimes expresses the idea of moving towards an ending or a change of state.

I'll come and see you off at the airport tomorrow. [go to the airport in order to say goodbye] My cousin has sold off his share of the Internet company he started with a friend. [sold all or part of a business]

After lunch Grandpa dozed off on the sofa. [gradually started to sleep, especially during the day] Mr Prosser suddenly looked very pale and broke off in the middle of his lecture. [suddenly stopped speaking]

She's so clever. She can run off a 1,000-word essay in an hour. It takes me all day! [quickly and easily write something that is usually difficult to write]

Note that run off with the meaning of leave somewhere quickly could also have been included in A above.

### Other expressions with off

What he said has put me off the idea of going to Blandville for a holiday altogether! [made me not like something]

His description of the hotel was very off-putting. [adjective: made something sound unattractive or unpleasant, from the verb put off

Maybe we should hold off and go to Paris or somewhere in the spring? [delay doing something] I think I've managed to turn him off the idea of building a model railway track in the back garden. [make someone decide that they are not interested in something]

She didn't get offended by the comment; she just laughed it off. [laughed about something unpleasant in order to make it seem less important or serious]

ot

bye] ıll or

e day] ly

tly

ıde

thing]

ıg

15.1	Complete these sentences, using verbs from A or B. Write the verbs in the correct form.
	1 The company is not doing very well – isn't it time you off your shares in it?
	2 We were talking to Janice when she suddenly off in the middle of a sentence and ran out of the room.
	3 I thought it was very rude of him just to off like that without saying goodbye.
	4 Would you like me to come and you off at the station?
	5 I thought I'd off fairly soon – I've got to get up early tomorrow, but thank you for a lovely party.
	6 I was so tired that I just off in front of the television.
	7 You mustn't forget to off that birthday card this afternoon.
	8 A large crowd gathered to watch the rocket off.
15.2	Replace the underlined words in these sentences with phrasal verbs from the opposite page.
	1 It won't take her long to do the letters you asked her to do.
	2 I often fall asleep in boring lectures.
	3 Let's try and leave quietly before the others wake up.
	4 In the middle of a long speech the actor suddenly stopped and ran off the stage.
	5 I've put all the students' exam results in the post.
	6 The school disco has given her quite negative feelings about discos in general.
	7 Tell that boy in our front garden to leave at once - he's annoying the dog.
	8 Fortunately, he didn't take the criticism of his acting seriously.
15.3	Answer these questions using full sentences.
	<ul> <li>1 If someone criticised your hairstyle would you laugh it off or get very upset?</li> <li>2 What kind of programmes are most likely to make you doze off in front of the television?</li> <li>3 If you go on a journey on your own, who usually sees you off?</li> </ul>
	4 Can you run off an English essay quickly or does it take you a long time to do? 5 Why might a lecturer break off in the middle of a talk?
	6 If you plan to slip off during a party, how are you intending to go? 7 If someone tells some children to 'clear off', how do you think that person probably feels about the children?
	8 Name something that might put you off eating your dinner.
15.4	Rewrite these sentences using a phrasal verb from the opposite page that means the opposite
	of the underlined verb. Make any other necessary changes so that the sentences make sense.
	1 I'm going to meet James at the airport tomorrow.
	2 I've just received a letter from Pauline.
	3 The rocket is due to land tomorrow at noon.
	4 I hope I've managed to interest him in the idea of redecorating the house.
	5 I woke up when all the others went off to play tennis.
	6 We're planning to arrive in the early evening.

## On and in

#### On

On in phrasal verbs sometimes has a clear link with the basic physical meaning of on.

Never buy shoes without trying them on! [putting on a piece of clothing to see whether it fits and whether you like it]

Ray: Do you think Dan's really feeling better or is he just putting on a brave face? [pretending to have a particular feeling or behave in a way that is not real or natural

No, I think he's fine now. I don't think his cheerfulness is put-on. [adjective: pretend or Joe: not genuine, from the verb put on

Sam: I've got something weighing on\* my mind at the moment. Could you give me some advice? [worrying, upsetting]

Deb: No problem. Tell me all about it and I'll do what I can.

On is also used with verbs where there is an idea of dependence.

You can always rely/depend/count on\* Jim! [be confident that someone will help you] In these four verbs upon may be used instead of on. Upon sounds slightly more formal.

On in phrasal verbs also often contains an idea of further.

Just because you've failed one driving test, you mustn't stop having lessons. You must keep on trying. [continue to do something]

When you've finished with the magazine, just pass it on to someone else. [give]

#### In

Here are some of the many phrasal verbs that use in. In each case there is a link with the basic physical meaning of in.

phrasal verb	meaning	example
call in	visit a place or person for a short time, usually when you are going somewhere else	Please call in and see us when you are next in town.
take sth in or take in sth	make a piece of clothing narrower	This skirt is too big for me now – I'll have to take it in.
rub sth in or rub in sth	put a substance on the surface of something and rub it so that it goes into the surface	Rub the cream in gently with the tips of your fingers.
lock sb in or lock in sb	prevent someone from leaving a room or building by locking the doors	Make sure you leave the office by 6.30 p.m. or you'll be locked in.
push in (informal)	rudely join a line of people who are waiting by going in front of some of the people who are already there	It's so annoying when people push in at the bus stop.
sink in	start to be believed (used about something unpleasant or surprising, which usually has implications)	Be patient with Jenny — it'll take a long time for the terrible news to sink in.

fits

al

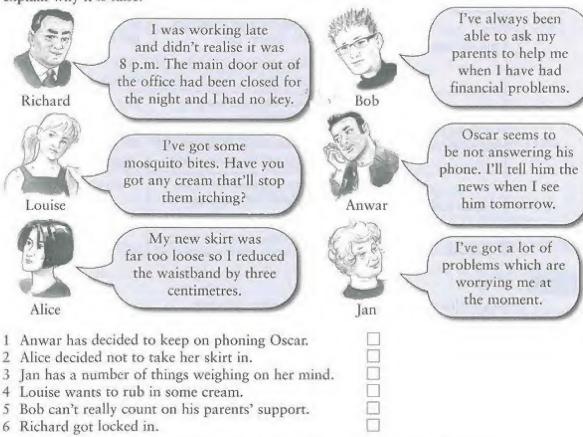
d or

ive

of

p.m.

- 16.1 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences, using phrasal verbs from A.
  - 1 I read the gardening article you gave me then gave it to a friend who's also interested in plants.
  - 2 Do you think she's really angry, or do you think she's just pretending?
  - 3 He looks very pale and tired. Something is clearly worrying him.
  - 4 It's a lovely jacket. See if it fits you and how it looks on you.
  - 5 I'm not going to stop working until I've finished this report.
  - 6 You can be sure that Brian will be there when you need him.
- 16.2 Look at these remarks by different people and then read the statements 1-5 below. If the statement is true, tick  $(\checkmark)$  the box. If the statement is false, put a cross (X) in the box and explain why it is false.



- Correct the mistakes in these sentences. There is one mistake in each sentence.
  - 1 Hey, that man just pushed on that taxi should have been ours!
  - 2 Mary's bad news has been weighing my mind on all day.
  - 3 I need time for to sink in the news.
  - 4 I couldn't leave the room because someone had locked me out.
  - 5 Phrasal verbs may seem hard but you must keep upon trying.
  - 6 You'll never guess who called at the office in today!

FOLLOW Go to the Cambridge University Press dictionary website at dictionary.cambridge.org. Find one more meaning for each of these verbs and write an example sentence: pass on, take in and rub in. If you do not have Internet access, try looking in a good monolingual or bilingual dictionary.

## Down and over

#### Different meanings of down

general meaning of down	example	meaning of phrasal verb in example
move in the direction of the ground	We'll have to chop/cut down that old tree. It's dead.	cut through it so that it falls to the ground
heaviness which causes difficulty	We were weighed down with luggage, so we couldn't run to catch the train.  I was loaded down with library books, so I took the bus home.	carrying too much
put on paper	Just take down the main points, not everything the lecturer says.  I'll write down your phone number, or else I'll forget it.	write something, especially something that someone says write something on a piece of paper so that you do not forget it
reduce a number or amount, or not let it rise	I'm taking these tablets to keep my blood pressure down. I'm trying to cut down on burgers and chips as I've started to put on weight.	stop the number, level, or size of something from increasing eat or drink less of a particular thing, usually in order to improve your health
stop an activity	The car factory has shut down, and 2,000 people have lost their jobs.  That nice Italian restaurant in town has closed down. What a pity!	closed and stopped working stopped doing business

#### Over

Read Ali's e-mail to Karen about a report at work.

100 -	1	territorial territorial de la companya del companya del companya de la companya d
From:	Ali Masrouf	Sent: Thu 25/05 14:33
To:	Karen Miles	Cer
Subject:	Philippa's report	Attached:

Could you please read over! Philippa's latest report and just look over2 the figures in the appendix? We can go over3 it together when we meet tomorrow. Then I'll add our comments and hand the whole thing over to the sales team.

Ali

Listen to this answerphone message.



Hi, Mum. I'm staying over at Sheila's tonight - she's a bit miserable because she didn't win the tennis championship. I'm sure she'll get over2 it soon, though. She also fell over3 and hurt her knee quite badly. Anyway, I'll see you tomorrow. Bye.

- read something from the beginning to the end in order to find any mistakes or to understand it better
- <sup>2</sup> quickly examine something
- 3 talk or think about something in order to explain it or make sure that it is correct
- give something to someone else
- spending the night somewhere else rather than going home (staying on its own would also be possible here)
- <sup>2</sup> recover from an illness or disappointment
- 3 fell to the ground (fell on its own would also be possible here)

- Exercises Read the sentences using phrasal verbs from A and answer the questions. 1 Jamie is weighed down with luggage. What do we know about Jamie's luggage? 2 She's trying to cut down on chocolate. Does she still eat chocolate? 3 Sid took down everything we said. Did Sid tape or write what was said? 4 The garage has shut down. Has the garage shut for the evening? 5 They chopped down the bushes in front of their house. Why might they have decided to do this? 17.2 Complete these newspaper headlines with the correct verbs from the box. Write the verbs in the correct form. chop hand 1 LOCAL CAFÉ DOWN BY HEALTH INSPECTORS 2 DOCTORS WARN TEENAGERS TO \_\_\_\_\_\_ DOWN ON CIGARETTES 3 REBEL TROOPS \_\_\_\_\_OVER WEAPONS 4 TWENTY OAKS ...... DOWN TO MAKE WAY FOR BYPASS 5 GOVERNMENT PROMISES TO \_\_\_\_\_\_DOWN INFLATION 17.3 Answer these questions about phrasal verbs with down and over. Use a dictionary if necessary. 1 Which three phrasal verbs in the e-mail on the opposite page are often used with through instead of over? Does using through instead of over change the meaning at all? 2 Can you see any meaning for over that connects the three verbs in the answerphone message? 3 Match each of the phrasal verbs below with the correct general meaning of down from the table in A. a) I need a holiday. Stress and overwork are wearing me down.
- ng thing nake

rder

)

50

ulth

ne

e else ng sible

awn

e) The government is doing all it can to hold prices down. 4 Explain what these phrasal verbs with over mean in the sentences below.

a) Sally is very good at putting her ideas over in meetings.

c) A lot of fences blew down in the hurricane last night. d) The police are trying to crack down on street crime.

b) Let me note down your e-mail address on this slip of paper.

b) I haven't got enough room. Can you move over, please?

- c) Can you check over these figures for me, please? It's important that there are no
- d) Don't put your glass of wine on the floor. Someone is sure to knock it over.
- e) Make sure the milk does not boil over.

# Around and about

Around and about are often interchangeable in phrasal verbs: both particles are equally possible with all the verbs in A below and with some of the verbs in B. Note also that round can sometimes replace around.

Phrasal verbs with around and about often express the idea of acting in a relaxed way, or without a particular purpose or without concentrating.

Most of the verbs in this unit are informal.

### Spending time

phrasal verb	meaning	example
wait about/around	stay in one place without doing anything as you wait for something to happen	If you can wait around for about an hour, we should be able to tell you your results.
laze about/around	relax and enjoy yourself by doing very little	For the first week of our holiday we usually just laze about on the beach.
sit about/around (somewhere)	spend time sitting down and doing very little	Please let me help you. I don't like just sitting about all day.
hang about/around/ round (somewhere) (informal)	spend time somewhere without doing very much	There are always a lot of rather suspicious-looking men hanging round outside that bar.
mess about/around	spend time playing or doing things with no particular purpose behave stupidly, waste time doing unimportant things	Tim spends his weekends messing around in the garage repairing things.  The pupils were given extra homework for messing around in class.
mess sb about/ around (informal)	treat someone badly or waste their time, e.g. by changing your mind or not doing what you promised	He's been messing her around for ages and just won't commit to the relationship.
lie about/around	spend time lying down doing very little	I hate the way he just lies around all day watching TV while I'm working.

### Being in a place

Fans were milling about/around/round the hotel lobby hoping to see the film star and get her autograph. [walking around a particular place or area, usually while waiting for something] Meanwhile photographers and journalists were standing about/around/round chatting to each other. [spending time standing in a place waiting for someone or doing very little]

Mick: Can you stick around this afternoon? [informal: stay somewhere for a period of time] If so, I'll take you around/round the office and introduce you to the other secretaries if you like. [visit a place with someone showing them the most interesting or important parts

No, it's all right, thanks. The boss has already shown me around/round. [gone with Anne: someone to a place that they have not visited before and shown them the interesting parts

end

IST

und

ξs. ork

all

t her

ting

ith ing

	right-hand column.  1 mess 2 hang 3 lie about/(a)round 4 sit 5 laze	lie down doing very little spend time sitting down and doing very little relax, enjoy yourself and do very little behave stupidly or waste time spend time somewhere not doing very much	
18.2	Now use the verbs from exercise 18.1 to fill the gaps in these sentences. Write the verbs in the correct form and use each verb once only.		
	3 After the meeting we were just	nere for hours waiting for a taxi. Let's walk. around chatting for a while. around at home with a good	
18.3	<ol> <li>Rewrite the underlined words in these sented.</li> <li>Do you want to stay here after the meeting you and show you the most interesting post and held our banners up.</li> <li>They spend most weekends just doing the don't really sail it seriously.</li> <li>On my first day, the boss went with me to various people I'd be working with.</li> <li>At the drinks party people were just want they knew.</li> </ol>	ences, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.  ng? I finish work at 5 p.m. and I could go with  places in the old town.  ration. We just stood in one place not doing much  ings without much purpose in their boat; they  through the workshop and introduced me to  dering here and there hoping to find someone  ou problems and waste your time, but I wonder if	
18.4	Here are some other phrasal verbs with about in your own words what they mean. Use a 1 I've got to go now but I'll see you aroun 2 Don't order me about! I'm not your serv 3 Shop assistant: Can I help you?  Customer: No thanks. I'm just loo 4 My suitcase got a bit bashed about on the 5 He told the kids to stop fooling around.	d. ant, you know. king around.	

# For and with

Note that with all the verbs in this unit the particles for and with must go before the object of the verb.

#### For

Each response in the dialogues below contains two phrasal verbs with for. Learning verbs in pairs associated with the same context can help you remember them.

Nina: I've been given the chance to apply for that new post in Head Office. What do

you think?

I think you should go for it [try to get or achieve it]. We'll all be rooting for you Gary:

[informal: showing support for you in a competition, or hoping that you will

succeed].

Melanie: How's your new babysitter?

Brad: We couldn't ask for a better babysitter [the new babysitter is the best of her kind].

She just lives for our kids and they just adore her |believes that the kids are the

most important people in her life].

Val: I saw you going into Betty's flat with her this morning. Is anything wrong?

Irene: Her washing machine had flooded the kitchen. She sent for a plumber and got it

fixed but it left a terrible mess [send someone a message asking them to come to see you]. We had planned to go into town and I was calling for her on the way there, but in the end we stayed at home and tidied the mess in the kitchen [visiting

her place in order to collect her].

What does 'R' mean on that sign? loe:

Ray: I think it stands for 'restaurant' [is the first letter of a word or name and is used

to represent it]. Let's stop. You must be dying for something to eat [informal; be

wanting something very much, especially food or drink].

#### With

phrasal verb	meaning	example
could do with sth/sb	need or want something or someone (informal)	I could do with a cup of tea.
deal with sth	if something [e.g. book, film, article] deals with a particular subject or idea, it is about that subject or idea	His latest book deals with the civil war of 1984–1989.
stick with it	continue doing something even though it is difficult (informal)	I know studying for a PhD is hard, but I think you should stick with it.
go with sth	if one thing goes with another, they suit each other or they look or taste good together	That shirt goes really well with your blue jacket.
put up with sb/sth	accept unpleasant behaviour or an unpleasant situation, even though you do not like it	I don't know how she puts up with his bad temper.
catch up with sb	meet someone you know, after not seeing them for a period of time	I hope to catch up with Freda when I'm in Berlin. I haven't seen her for years

ct

in

uc

nd].

ir to

iting

bs be

ars.

19.1	Look at the phrasal verbs in A. Then match the questions 1-6 with the appropriate answers a-f below.
	1 Do you think I should buy these shoes – they're a bit expensive? 2 Oh dear, look at that accident. 3 What did you think of the restaurant? 4 Do you know what CV means? 5 Would you like to go to a café? 6 Who are you supporting in the league?
	a) Couldn't have asked for anything better! b) Yes, go for it! c) Quick! Send for an ambulance! d) Yes, I'm dying for an ice cream. e) We're rooting for the Reds, as usual. f) Sure! It stands for curriculum vitae.
19.2	Complete these sentences with an appropriate verb. Write the verb in the correct form.
	<ul> <li>He for a doctor as soon as he felt the pains in his chest.</li> <li>Martha for her work so she's going to find it very hard when she has to retire.</li> <li>These boots don't really with this skirt, but they're comfortable.</li> <li>You for a nicer teacher. She's so patient and kind.</li> <li>I'll have to have a word with Gina. I can't up with her rudeness any longer!</li> </ul>
	6 Your hair is too long – you with a haircut. 7 You should with the course. It would be a shame to give up now. 8 I love going back to my home town and up with all my old friends.
19.3	Use a phrasal verb from the opposite page to complete these dialogues.
	1 Anne: This fish tastes delicious with your tomato sauce.  Jenny: Yes, they do
19.4	Rewrite these sentences, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.
	1 I couldn't tolerate such noisy neighbours as yours. 2 It's been such a busy week. I can't wait for the weekend. 3 Jean's shoes match her handbag perfectly. 4 All the students at his university were hoping Kyle would win the golf championship. 5 I have the best job you could imagine. 6 Her grandson is the most important person in Stella's life.

# 20 Through and back



#### Through

Through in phrasal verbs gives an idea of going from one side of something to the other, or from the beginning to the end of something. Note that with most of these phrasal verbs through must go before the object of the verb.

If you sleep through a loud noise or activity, it does not wake you. I'm sorry I'm late. I'm afraid I slept through my alarm.

If you live through something, you experience a difficult situation or event. People who have lived through a war often have rather a different outlook on life.

If you flick/flip through a magazine or book, you look briefly at its pages. I usually flick/flip through a magazine before buying it.

If you look through something, you read it quickly and not very carefully.

If you go through something, you carefully read or discuss it to make sure that it is correct. I'll look through the report tonight and then we can go through it properly tomorrow.

If you take someone through something, you explain it or show them how to do it. Don't worry - Jack will take you through the job before we leave you on your own.

If you see through a person who is trying to trick you, you realise what they are really like or what they are trying to do.

He is so charming that few people see through him and realise that he is just a comman.



#### Back

Back in phrasal verbs usually conveys the idea of returning.

If you want to return something you have bought by post, perhaps because it is the wrong size or is damaged, you send it back. If you go to the shop to exchange it in person you take it back. Shops usually have to agree to take back things they have sold you if you find they are not in good condition when you get home. If you call/phone/ring someone back or e-mail someone back, you are replying to a phone message or e-mail from them.

Note that with the verbs above, back can go before or after the object of the verb.

If someone, especially a child, answers (someone) back, they reply rudely to someone they should be polite to.

Mother: Say thank you to Mrs Brown.

Child: Say thank you yourself.

Mother: Don't answer me back like that.

An interesting use of back is in the expression: We go back ten years. This is an informal way of saying: We have known each other for ten years.

If you bite back, you do something bad to someone because they did something bad to you. However, if you bite something back or bite back something, you stop yourself from saying something that shows your true feelings or thoughts.

When Emma is criticised she doesn't hesitate to bite back.

When Karl asked me what I thought of his lime-green suit, I had to bite back my initial response.

or

:ct.

ce or

1.

ig :ake

ey

ou.

-mail

Write what you could say in these situations using phrasal verbs with through. 20. 1 Your boss asks you to explain to a new member of staff how things are done in the office, step by step. What could you say to the new person? 2 A friend warns you that another person, Leo, is trying to trick you. Reassure the friend that you realised what Leo was really like the first moment you met him. 3 You arrive late for an important meeting. You set your alarm clock but didn't wake up when it rang. Apologise and explain what happened. 4 You have done some calculations at work, and there seems to be a mistake. Ask a colleague to read the figures carefully to see if they can see any mistakes. 5 A colleague offers to read in detail a 12-page report you have written. Tell them that that will not be necessary and that you'd be grateful if they just looked at it very briefly. (Give three possible answers.) 6 A friend asks you why a person you know always seems so sad. Explain that that person has experienced some terrible things over the last few years. 20.2 Complete these sentences using verbs from B. 1 This new jacket just doesn't look right on me; the colour is all wrong. If I \_\_\_\_\_\_ it back to the shop, do you think they'd \_\_\_\_\_ it back? I bought it over a week ago. 2 I had to \_\_\_\_\_\_ back some angry words when they told me I had lost my job. 3 I bought this clock on the Internet, but it's not as nice as it looked on the computer screen. I think I'll .... it back. 4 I don't think she'll just accept his insults. She's the sort of person who will back if she's attacked. 5 We're old friends. We \_\_\_\_\_ back to the 1980s when we were at college together. 6 Children nowadays seem to lack respect for their parents and won't hesitate to back. 20.3 Complete the sentences using an appropriate phrasal verb from the opposite page. I Joe rang while you were out, Please could you 2 I don't like these trousers I bought today. I think I



Harry missed his train this morning because he
 Ellen isn't really reading the magazine; she's just

Mr Trotsky was one of those people everyone could see through immediately.

# Into and away



#### Into

Read the entries in Diana's personal diary. Each entry has a phrasal verb with into.

7 Mon	Ran into Mary W In town today. Nice to see her again.
8 Tue	Car problems again todayl Must look into getting a new one.
9 Wed	Poor old Eileen! The boss told her he didn't like some work she'd done and she burst Into tears.
10 Thu	The boss wants to have lunch with me. Anne says I shouldn't read anything Into it, but I'm suspicious of his motives.
11 Eri	Met Liam today. He went into his marriage problems in great detail. Felt sorry for him.
12 Sat	Decided to throw myself into doing some gardening now that spring is here!
18 Sun	Saw Llam again. Told him I was busy as I didn't want to enter Into another discussion about his private life.

met someone I know when I did not expect to meet them

investigate and examine the facts about a problem or situation

suddenly started to make a noise, especially to start crying, laughing or singing

believe that an action, remark, or situation has a particular importance or meaning, often when this is not true

described and discussed something in a detailed way

start doing something with a lot of enthusiasm and energy

start to become involved in something, especially a discussion. (Note that you enter a room, not enter into a room.)

#### Away

phrasal verb	meaning	example
tidy away sth or tidy sth away	put things in cupboards and drawers, etc. after you have been using them	Mum told me to tidy away all my things before my aunt came to visit.
pack away sth or pack sth away	put something into a bag or container, or put something in the place where it is usually kept	The scouts packed away their tents and left the camping ground.
tear sb away (usually + from)	force someone to stop doing something they enjoy in order to do something else	I'm sorry to tear you away from your computer, but I need your help.
stay away from sth	avoid something that has a bad effect on you	I think I should stay away from desserts. I'm putting on weight.
send away for sth	write to an organisation to ask them to send you something	I've sent away for a brochure about holidays in New Zealand.
lock yourself away	go to a room or building where you can be alone, usually so that you can work	I decided to lock myself away in my room till I'd finished my essay.
run away (often + from)	secretly leave a place because you are unhappy there	Did you ever run away from home as a child?

expect

out a

pecially

uation ing,

ı a

ıg, H

it. ents

∌lp.

out

ne as

21.1	Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.		
	1 At the supermarket yesterday Julia ran 2 Kim is getting over his broken heart by	into his words.	
	throwing himself	into Martin.	
	<ul><li>3 When she saw me dressed up as a pirate she burst</li><li>4 He doesn't think before he speaks so don't</li></ul>	into the causes of the war.	
	read too much	into the argument.	
	<ul><li>5 In your essay you should have gone more fully</li><li>6 We were disagreeing about the film and then</li></ul>	into what happened.	
	Jo entered 7 The police are doing all they can to look	into laughter. into his studies.	
21.2	Complete these sentences using a phrasal verb with and add, if necessary, a reflexive pronoun (e.g. mys		
	1 I once terrified my parents by		
	2 Please your games an		
	3 You really should Sta		
	4 She was so upset that she in her room until the next morning.		
	5 Adam has an applicat 6 Please could you from		
21.2			
21.3	Complete these sentences in any way that makes sense using one of the phrasal verbs from the opposite page.		
	1 I was very surprised when Helen burst		
	2 It makes sense to stay		
	3 My best friend always throws		
	4 Sometimes I'd really like to run		
	5 I find this job so stressful. I really should look		
	6 When I went to the town centre last week I ran  7 Before moving house I spent weeks packing		
	8 Whenever visitors are coming, I usually tidy		
21.4	Here are some more phrasal verbs with <i>into</i> and <i>at</i> the phrasal verbs with the definitions a-e below. U	way. Read the sentences 1-5 and match	
4	1 As soon as Joe saw me he launched into a long account of his travels.		
	2 Because it is so expensive in this country at the moment, tourists are keeping away.		
	3 Trying to cross the room in the dark, he banged into a small table and knocked it over.		
	4 It isn't a person in that field, it's a scarecrow – the farmer wants to scare the birds away. 5 I bumped into your sister in town this morning.		
	<ul> <li>a) knock against something, usually by accident</li> <li>b) meet someone you know when you have not pla</li> </ul>	nned to meet them	
	c) start doing or saying something (e.g. a speech or a story) in a very enthusiastic way		
	d) make a person or animal so frightened that they go away		
	e) not go to a place		
21.5	Can you see any basic meanings for into and away might help you learn them?	in the phrasal verbs in this unit that	

#### A At work

Florence works as a nurse. When she starts work she has to **clock on**<sup>1</sup> and when she leaves she **clocks off**<sup>2</sup>. If the machine shows that she has worked an extra long shift, then she is able to **take** time **off**<sup>3</sup> at a later date. She was planning to take a holiday in July this year but has had to **bring** it **forward**<sup>4</sup> as July is going to be a particularly busy time for her hospital this year. Florence loves her work but her hospital is understaffed and she hates to always **be pressed for**<sup>5</sup> time. She finds it almost impossible to **fit in**<sup>6</sup> time to talk to the patients although she feels that is an important part of her job. She can chat for a few minutes but then she has to **press on**<sup>7</sup> with her other duties. The hospital employs many nurses from overseas; but when their work

- record the time she arrives at work, usually at a machine with a clock (also clock in)
- <sup>2</sup> record the time she leaves work (also clock out)

permits run out<sup>8</sup> after two years they have to leave.

- 3 spend time away from work
- 4 change the date or time of something so that it happens earlier than expected
- 5 not have enough of something, usually time or money
- 6 find time to do something or see someone
- <sup>7</sup> continue doing something in a determined way
- 8 come to an end (of the period of time of a document or agreement); more formal equivalent is expire

### B At leisure

When Florence does have spare time, she likes to relax. She usually hangs out! with friends she was at school with. They have knocked around together<sup>2</sup> for years and love whiling away<sup>3</sup> their days off, going round the shops or just chatting at one of their homes. Sometimes they go away for a weekend and muck about<sup>4</sup> at Florence's aunt's cottage in the countryside. Last time they did that, a colleague of Florence's latched on to<sup>5</sup> them. The others didn't really like her at first, especially as they always had to hang on<sup>6</sup> while she got ready, but now they all like her very much.



- spends a lot of time (informal)
- 2 spent a lot of time with one another because they are good friends (informal)
- 3 spending time in a relaxed way either because they are waiting for something or have nothing special to do
- 4 waste time doing silly things (informal)
- 5 spent time with them, especially when they did not want her with them
- 6 wait, usually for a short time (informal)

nd ed vas rd<sup>4</sup> ear. tes to ant ork

t is

ing

	1 I'm afraid I'm a bit for cash today. Could you lend me some?
	2 Oh dear! My passport has out. I must renew it before our trip. 3 I usually on at 9 a.m. every day, but if my train is late it might be 9.15. I off at 5 p.m., but sometimes I can finish a bit earlier on
	Fridays.  4 Mr Chan wants to the meeting forward to this week as he's busy all next week. I'm not sure if we can it in this week as we're ever so busy too.
	5 If we on after lunch we can probably finish the report by 5 p.m. 6 I'm going to some time off next month and go and stay with my parents.
2.2	Write an appropriate question to fit each answer.
	Oh, I usually just hang out with friends, or sometimes I do some sport.
	Well, he never studied; he just spent all his time mucking about, so it's no surprise.
	Oh, about ten years. We used to knock around together as teenagers.
	No, she's not a friend. She just latched on to our group and followed us.
	Oh, it's great for whiling away the time if you're waiting for a plane or a train.
	Let's just hang on for five minutes. I want to speak to someone.
2.3	Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.
	<ol> <li>We had to wait an hour for the next train, so we went for a walk to while off the time.</li> <li>A young French woman latched to me at the party last night. I think she wanted to practise her English.</li> </ol>
	<ul> <li>3 I clock on work at 7.30 a.m. every morning.</li> <li>4 We have to finish this job by six o'clock. We'd better press up with it.</li> </ul>
	5 I just don't know how we're going to fit three meetings on before the summer break.



FOLLOW

Write a description of how you spend your work and leisure time, using as many of the phrasal verbs in this unit as you can.

# Time: passing of time

#### A

The past

# Journey into the past at the Charnbury Folk Museum

If you're young, come on a journey into the past before you were born. If you're a senior, let us **take you back**<sup>1</sup> to your childhood. **Think back**<sup>2</sup> to what everyday life was like 50, 60, 100 years ago, before TV, before computers, before fridges and washing machines. Many of our exhibits **date back**<sup>3</sup> to the early 19<sup>th</sup> century.

Is that old vacuum cleaner in your attic just a **leftover**<sup>4</sup> from a **bygone**<sup>5</sup> era or is it a piece of industrial history? Come and find out.

Open: Monday-Friday, 10 a.m.-5 p.m.

Admission: Adults - £2.00

Concessions - £1.20

Address: Palmer Square, Charnbury

Tel: 0211 4684536

- make you remember a period or an event in the past
- think about things that happened in the past
- 3 have existed since a particular time
- 4 (noun) something which exists from an earlier time
- 5 (adjective) from a time which does not exist any more

Leftover (noun) and bygone (adjective) are formed from the verbs be left over and go by. We used some balloons that were left over from the Christmas party to decorate the house for her birthday. [still existed/were unused from an earlier time]
As time goes by you realise that your parents' advice was in your best interest. [passes]

Note that bygone also exists as a noun, but it is usually always in the plural bygones.

### B Time moving

I'm sorry to hold you up but you must sign these forms before you go in. [delay you]

If there are no hold-ups, we should arrive by about seven o'clock. [noun: delays]

Jim, can you hurry the kids up. The coach is about to leave. [make them act more quickly]

Mum walks so fast. It's quite hard to keep up with her. [go at the same speed as someone]

The meeting dragged on and everyone got irritable. [continued for too long]

I'm sorry I'm late. My French lesson ran on, so I didn't leave school till 4.30 p.m. [continued for longer than expected]

Three weeks passed by before I got a reply to my letter of complaint. [went past]

It's difficult to plan for the future. Nobody knows what lies ahead. [will happen in the future]



If a phrasal verb has a noun or adjective form associated with it, learn them together and record them together in your vocabulary notebook, e.g. leftover and be left over.

23.1 Write the best phrasal verb expression from the options below to complete this text.

		and I found it very entertaini L bit. At the beginning it	
		ing an ordinary Iron-Age life.	
		nly start	
Suddenly he is	in the future and, as	s he is now as it very hard to understand	
This results in	a number of amusing	incidents. Although the plot is	s occasionally a little
difficult to foll	ow I would certainly r	recommend it.	

- 1 a) passed by
- b) dragged on
- c) held up
- d) dated back

- 2 a) thinks back
- b) hurries you up
- c) takes you back c) hurrying up
- d) holds you up

- 3 a) going by
- b) lying ahead
- c) bygones
- d) keeping up d) leftover

- 4 a) bygone
- b) hold-up

- 5 a) bygone
- b) hold-up
- c) bygones
- d) leftover
- 23.2 Explain the difference in meaning between these pairs of sentences.
  - 1 a) The lecture ran on.
    - b) The lecture dragged on.
  - 2 a) John held us up.
    - b) John hurried us up.
  - 3 a) This song takes me back to my childhood.
    - b) This song dates back to my childhood.
  - 4 a) It was not easy to keep up with the children as we went through town.
    - b) It was not easy to hurry up the children as we went through town.
- 23.3 Here are some things people might say relating to time. What does the speaker mean in each sentence? Use a dictionary if necessary.
  - 1 The older you get, the faster time goes by.
  - 2 Music and smells have great powers to take you back.
  - 3 Mr Jones is a leftover from a bygone age.
  - 4 We should let bygones be bygones!
  - 5 You never know what lies ahead.
- 23.4 Rewrite these sentences using the words in brackets. Write the words in the correct form.
  - 1 The old oil lamps in my grandfather's house looked like things that had survived from a different era. (LEFTOVER, BYGONE)
  - 2 The smell of chalk always reminds me of my schooldays. (TAKE BACK)
  - 3 The traffic was delayed on the motorway because of an accident. (HOLD-UP)
  - 4 Sometimes, if the textbook is boring, the lesson seems to last longer than it should. (DRAG ON)
  - 5 We can never know what the future will bring. (LIE AHEAD)
  - 6 These pizzas were from the party. Nobody ate them. Would you like one? (LEFTOVER)

Jy]

er a in

that ist a

which

ier

time

ist

ise

iel

nued

ture]

nem

### Describing where places are

example	meaning
We stayed in a lovely hotel which was tucked away in a little valley.	was in a quiet or hidden place that not many people see or go to (from be tucked away)
Our room opened onto a balcony with lovely views of the countryside.	opened in the direction of the countryside or had a view of it (from <b>open onto</b> sth)
Fields and woods stretched away to the horizon.	continued over a long distance (from stretch away)
We could see a few farmhouses which were spread out over the landscape.	were in different parts of a large area and not close together (from be spread out)
We felt we were completely <b>cut off</b> from the busy modern world!	very far away from other places and people (from be cut off)

### People in locations

Read this conversation between two students.

Deb: Come in, John.

John: What a great room!

Deb: Well, I like it. It was a bit dull when I moved in, but I bought these nice curtains which help to brighten it up1. In fact, I like it so much here that I'd rather stay in2 than go out most evenings.

You're lucky! The room I rent is so miserable that I stay out3 as long as I can! I even stayed on4 in the library tonight until it closed! Anyhow, I've come to bring you your file - you left it behind<sup>5</sup> at the seminar this morning.

Deb: Oh, thanks. How silly of me. I'm glad you noticed it.

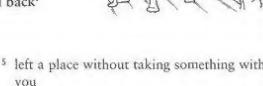
Well, I stayed behind6 to ask the Prof some John: questions and then saw it lying there.

Deb: Thank you very much. Would you like a coffee now you're here?

Well, I can't stay now. But I'd love to call back? John: another time if that's OK?

Deb: Sure, that'd be nice.

- make more attractive, often by adding colours
- <sup>2</sup> remain at home, especially in the evenings
- 3 come home late or not come home at night
- 4 stayed in a place longer than planned
- 5 left a place without taking something with
- 6 did not leave a place when others left it
- <sup>7</sup> go back to a place to visit someone





Notice how three of the phrasal verbs in A are used in the passive: be tucked away, be spread out, be cut off. Make a special note in your vocabulary notebook if any phrasal verb construction is used in a particular way, e.g. in the passive, as a noun or as an adjective, and write down a typical example sentence to help you remember it.

ople

ad a

way)

ose

m

到了一个区人

with

e cut

it

24.1 Complete these sentences to describe these pictures using phrasal verbs based on the verbs in brackets.



The fields (stretch) ...



There are small houses (spread) ...



The room (open) ...



The house (tuck) ...



The house on the island (cut) ...

- 24.2 Which phrasal verb from B opposite means ...
  - 1 the opposite of go out, as in meet friends or go to a restaurant?
  - 2 not come home at night or come home late?
  - 3 forget to take something with you when you go away from a place?
  - 4 stay in a place when other people have left?
  - 5 make something which is dull or boring more attractive or colourful?
  - 6 stay somewhere longer than you planned?
  - 7 go back to a place to see someone, often to visit someone briefly or to collect something?
- 24.3 Use the phrasal verbs from exercise 24.2 to complete these sentences. Write the verbs in the correct form.
  - 1 I \_\_\_\_\_\_ my floppy disk \_\_\_\_\_ at the computer class. I'll have to go back and see if it's still in the machine.
  - 2 When you were a teenager, did your parents allow you to \_\_\_\_\_ late?
  - 3 Shop assistant: Pm afraid your photographs aren't ready yet. It will be another couple of hours.
    - Customer: Okay. I'll tomorrow.
  - 4 We've decided to paint the kitchen to \_\_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_ a bit. It's so gloomy and dull at the moment.
  - 5 I'm really tired. I think I'll \_\_\_\_\_\_tonight and not go to the party after all, sorry.
  - 6 The teacher asked the naughty boy to \_\_\_\_\_\_ after the lesson.
  - 7 We loved the resort so much we decided to \_\_\_\_\_\_ another week, even though our friends had gone home.



Go to the Cambridge University Press dictionaries website at <u>dictionary.cambridge.org</u> and select the Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs. In the search box, type behind and then search. From the list of phrasal verbs with behind, click on three that you are not familiar with and study the explanations.

# Cause and effect

### A

#### Verbs with off

A number of phrasal verbs associated with cause and effect have the particle off.



The terrorists set the bomb off in the middle of the rush hour. [caused an explosion]

We accidentally set off the burglar alarm when we came into the house. [made the alarm ring]

The scandal set off a series of events which caused the collapse of the government and a general election. [caused a series of events or a lot of activity, often without intending to do so

You shouldn't have mentioned flying saucers, You've set him off now. He'll talk for hours. [made him start to talk about something he often talks about]

The ending of the play really set her off. I didn't know whether she was laughing or crying. [made her start to laugh or cry]

The crisis sparked off a bitter civil war. [caused something to suddenly happen or exist]

The Prime Minister's speech triggered off violent protests in cities up and down the country. [made something suddenly begin, often a difficult or violent situation]

#### B

#### Other cause and effect verbs

Read these spoken extracts.

The new airport has brought about1 a lot of changes on this island.

made something happen

I don't know what lies behind2 Mr Wild's attack on me. Maybe he's trying to pay me back3 for something I said about him. Or maybe he's just stirring things up4.

2 is the real reason for

3 do something unpleasant to me because have done something unpleasant to him

4 causing arguments or bad feeling between people, usually on purpose

This photograph brings back5 memories of when we lived in Scotland, when I was a child.

5 makes me remember or think about something from the past

The doctors still haven't ruled out6 the possibility that he might have cancer.

6 decided that something is impossible

I think most problems teenagers experience spring from<sup>7</sup> a feeling of insecurity.

7 are caused by

one

n ring

do so)

IIS.

ing.

ntry.

because t to him

g oose

bout

ssible

	bring back	lie behind	stir up	set off	spark off	spring from	
	Dillig back	ne berning	stii up	ser on	spark on	spring nom	
	1 That song						
	·	_		dieledieledests thilesettes	the	fact that I n	ever really wanted to go
	3 I wonder v	ntancy as a		λ.	Anniale die	like of Davi	
							trouble between us.
	5 The film						in the order to be it to be it.
	6 The tragic	pictures of	the earthqu	uake victin			her
	and she jus	st couldn't s	top crying				
25.2	Fill the gaps i	in the parag	raph belov	v, using th	e correct v	erb or partic	le.
	T San San Ja				-		
							(1) the
							(2) off by overnment. Others
							ectrical fault and have
							was it a deliberate
	explosion set	random contrata de la contrata del contrata de la contrata del contrata de la contrata del contrata de la contrata de la contrata de la contrata del contrata de la contrata del contrata de la contrata de la contrata de la contrata del contrata de la contrata de la contrata del contrata del contrata del contrata de la contrata del contrata del contrata del contrata	(6) hv a c	warm who w	minted to	1	7) things up in andoute
						renamenamentamentament (	i) things up in order to
	terrational angular and installan					renamenanananin manena (	/) things up in order to
25.3	1-maintenantinananananananananananananananananan	(8) the gov	ernment bac	k for some	injustice?		
25.3	Which word	, (8) the gov	ernment bac x provides	k for some the best e	injustice?	these sentenc	
25.3	Which word	, (8) the gov	ernment bac	k for some	injustice?		
25.3	Which word	from the bo	x provides	the best e	injustice?  nding for reforms	these sentenc	res?
25.3	Which word	from the bo	x provides memories Year's Eve	the best e feelings we usually	nding for reforms	these sentenc violence me	res?
25.3	Which word suspects  1 At midnigs 2 The police 3 The politics	from the bo fireworks at on New Y used finger	ernment back x provides memories Year's Ever print tests ration trigg	the best e feelings we usually to rule our gered off	nding for reforms	these sentenc	res?
25.3	Which word suspects  1 At midnigl 2 The police 3 The politic 4 That music	from the bo fireworks at on New Y used finger cal demonstr	x provides memories Year's Every	the best e feelings we usually to rule our gered off	nding for reforms	these sentence	res?
25.3	Which word suspects  1 At midnigl 2 The police 3 The politic 4 That music 5 The govern	from the bo fireworks at on New Y used finger cal demonstr brings bac ament plans	memories Year's Every print tests ration triggs k	the best e feelings we usually to rule our gered off	nding for reforms set off some	these sentence violence	res?
	Which word suspects  1 At midnigl 2 The police 3 The politic 4 That music 5 The govern 6 Violet's co	from the bo fireworks at on New Y used finger cal demonstr brings bac ament plans	x provides memories Year's Every print tests ration trigge k to bring a red up a lo	the best e feelings we usually to rule our gered off	nding for reforms set off son	these sentence violence	res?
25.3	Which word suspects  1 At midnigl 2 The police 3 The politic 4 That music 5 The govern 6 Violet's co	from the bo fireworks at on New Y used finger al demonstr brings bac ament plans mments stir	x provides memories Year's Every print tests ration trigge k to bring a red up a lo	the best e feelings we usually to rule our gered off	nding for reforms set off son	these sentence violence	res?
	Which word suspects  1 At midnigl 2 The police 3 The politic 4 That music 5 The govern 6 Violet's co Complete the correct form. 1 Take no no	from the bo fireworks at on New Y used finger cal demonstr c brings bac ament plans mments stir- se sentences	memories Year's Every print tests ration trigg to bring a red up a lost using a plat the says.	the best e feelings we usually to rule our gered off bout t of bad hrasal verb	reforms set off some	violence me	ge. Write the verb in the
	Which word suspects  1 At midnig! 2 The police 3 The politic 4 That music 5 The govern 6 Violet's co Complete the correct form. 1 Take no no 2 She vowed	from the bo fireworks at on New Y used finger al demonstr brings bac ament plans mments stir- se sentences	x provides  memories  Year's Every print tests ration trigg k to bring a red up a log using a plant he says.	the best e feelings we usually to rule our gered off bout bout hrasal verb	nding for reforms set off son some	opposite pag	res?
	Which word suspects  1 At midnigl 2 The police 3 The politic 4 That music 5 The govern 6 Violet's co Complete the correct form. 1 Take no no 2 She vowed 3 I wonder v	from the bo fireworks  at on New Y used finger cal demonstr brings bac ament plans mments stir se sentences  otice of what that one day	x provides memories Year's Every print tests ration trigg k to bring a red up a lose using a plant he says.	the best e feelings we usually to rule our gered off bout hrasal verb	reforms set off son some from the strying to tests last v	opposite pag	ge. Write the verb in the trouble.
	Which word suspects  1 At midnight 2 The police 3 The politic 4 That music 5 The govern 6 Violet's co Complete the correct form. 1 Take no no 2 She vowed 3 I wonder v 4 The decision	from the bo fireworks  at on New Y used finger cal demonstr brings bac ment plans mments stir se sentences  otice of what that one da what	x provides memories Year's Every print tests ration trigg k to bring a red up a log s using a plant he says.	the best e feelings we usually to rule our gered off bout br of bad hrasal verb	nding for reforms set off some some from the reform the reformation the reform the reformation the reform the reform the reform the reform the reform the reformation the reform the reformation the reformation the reform the reformation the reformatio	opposite pag	ge. Write the verb in the trouble.
	Which word suspects  1 At midnight 2 The police 3 The politice 4 That music 5 The govern 6 Violet's co Complete the correct form. 1 Take no not 2 She vowed 3 I wonder vot 4 The decision 5 Detectives	from the bo fireworks  Int on New Y used finger cal demonstr c brings bac ament plans mments stir see sentences  otice of what that one da what on to increa still haven't	memories Year's Every print tests ration trigg to bring a red up a loss using a plat he says. It he sa	the best e feelings we usually to rule out gered off bout br of bad hrasal verb	reforms set off son some from the strying to tests last w the possib	opposite pag	ge. Write the verb in the trouble.

#### Up meaning more or better

When up is used in a phrasal verb with an idea of change, it often adds an idea of becoming more or better.

The number of students getting good marks in their exams is going up. [increasing]

I was afraid no-one would come to my lecture, but the room is filling up nicely now. [becoming fuller]

Things were bad last week but the situation is looking up now. [improving]

Business was down at the beginning of the year, but is picking up now. [improving after a bad period]

Would you like me to heat up the rice or will you have it cold? [make warmer]

Simon's been ignoring the situation for ages - it's time he woke up to what's happening. [became more aware of a situation or problem]

### Other phrasal verbs relating to change

When I look back over the last year I see an awful lot of changes in my life. For instance at work, there has been an almost total changeover of staff in the office. Then during the year we have phased out<sup>2</sup> all the old computers and phased in3 a completely new system of office administration. I wasn't sure how things would pan out4 at first and there were a few problems to begin with. However, the arguments about the new system blew over5 quite quickly.

At the beginning of the year, my girlfriend left me and it took me a while to get over that. But everything's fine with my personal life too now. Best of all, of course, is the fact that I've managed to give up<sup>2</sup> smoking this year. I didn't feel too good for the first few weeks but that's all worn off3 now. I stuck with4 my new regime and now I feel fitter than I have for ages.

noun: a change from using or having one thing to using or having another (from change over)

<sup>2</sup> gradually stopped using

gradually started using

develop or happen

<sup>5</sup> became less important and were then forgotten



begin to feel better after an experience that has made you unhappy

stop a habit or stop doing or having something unhealthy

gradually disappeared

did as I had planned and did not change to something else (informal)



Sometimes it may help to learn phrasal verbs in pairs of opposites, e.g. phase in or phase out a new system; heat up or cool down food; take up or give up an activity; prices go up or go down.

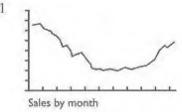
26.1 Look at these pictures and then complete the sentences about them below, using phrasal verbs from A.

ming

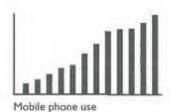
· a

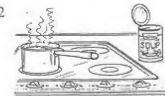
ne thing

re over)



3







1 Sales have \_\_\_\_\_ during the last few months.

- 2 I was in the kitchen \_\_\_\_\_ some soup when I heard the phone.
- 3 Mobile phone use is \_\_\_\_\_ all the time.
- 4 The bus isn't full yet, but it's
- 26.2 Complete these sentences using the two verbs from A opposite which you did not use in exercise 26.1.
  - 1 It's time you \_\_\_\_\_ to reality and went out and found a job!
  - 2 The economic situation is definitely : exports have increased and unemployment is down.
- 26.3 Complete the word puzzle.

Across

- 1 change from one thing to another (noun)
- 2 We can't change it; we're with it.
- 3 I'm angry, but I'll ...... over it.
- 4 The scandal will \_\_\_\_\_ over after a few months.

Down

- 5 The firm will ..... in a new pension scheme.
- 6 I'm not sure how the situation will

	5			-			
I	Н		N		0		F
	2				-1		
		4			3		

- ....out. 7 I think I'll ...... up soccer and start playing golf instead.
- 8 I had an injection at the dentist's and it hasn't \_\_\_\_\_\_ off yet, so I can't eat properly.
- Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verb expressions in these sentences.
  - 1 The overchange to the new accounting system has caused endless problems.
  - 2 There was a lot of trouble in the office last month, but it's all blown up now and things are back to normal.
  - 3 Shall I hot up that pizza for you? I expect it's gone cold by now.
  - 4 All these old telephones will be faced out over the next year and we'll get new, digital ones.

that

A

Read these extracts to understand the underlined phrasal verb expressions in the headlines.

#### NORTHCORP BRINGS OFF \$10M DEAL

Northcorp Telecommunications announced last night that the company had secured a \$10m dollar deal in the face of severe competition and despite many difficulties.

#### STARFINDER CD TAKES OFF

The first CD by the group which won the TV show 'Starfinder', where bands competed for a record contract, has become instantly popular one day after it was released, and is now number one.

#### TINA TAKES OVER AS NUMBER ONE POP IDOL

18-year-old singer Tina Hoogan has been voted number one female performer in a national pop poll, replacing last year's winner, Francie Moon as the country's most popular female artist.

#### MINI-BALLOON ATTEMPT COMES OFF DESPITE WEATHER

An attempt to fly a mini hot-air balloon under Tower Bridge in London has succeeded, despite fog and rain which threatened to prevent the event.

#### UMBRELLAS FAIL TO <u>CATCH ON</u> WITH TEENAGERS

An attempt by a Japanese company to market a new range of jazzy umbrellas to teenagers has failed. Sales show that they have not become as popular as the company hoped.

### Druma pulls off record attempt

ZAFI DRUMA yesterday succeeded in winning the 100m, 400m and 800m all on the same day at the International Athletics Championships in Mexico City, despite fierce international competition.

#### DOWNFALL OF REBEL GROUP MARKS END OF CIVIL WAR

The failure of the rebel army to hold on to the western part of Kahuba and the rapid collapse of popular support for the rebels means the country's civil war is at an end.

#### PLAN TO BUILD NEW STADIUM FALLS THROUGH

The President of the Football Association announced last night that the plan to build a new £200m national stadium has failed and the stadium will not be built.

**B** Read this speech by a headteacher to pupils who are leaving school.

When you leave this school, we hope you will build on what you have learnt here. You must not expect to just walk into a highly-paid job, but most of you will, with hard work and self-discipline, succeed and achieve great things. Never be content to just muddle through as so many people do, always trying to catch up and failing to do so. Hard work, dedication and commitment will, in the end, pay off. To keep up with the competition we all have to give 100%, so that our country can stay ahead in business and industry. It will be your job to make this happen. Good luck.

- use a success or achievement as a base from which to achieve more success
- 2 get very easily
- <sup>3</sup> succeed in doing something even though you have difficulties because you do not really know how to do it
- 4 reach the same quality or standard as someone
- 5 be successful
- 6 make progress at the same speed as something or someone else so that you stay at the same level as them
- 7 continue to be more advanced and successful than other people

TIP

Where phrasal verbs fall naturally into two groups with opposite meanings, e.g. success versus failure, increase versus decrease, make two columns in your vocabulary notebook and fill them in as you meet new verbs that fit either column. Try doing this with the verbs on this page.

nes.

NC

t null

on to rapid rebels end.

meed ional uilt.

rom

ly you

meone

ething same

essful

re, neet

narket nagers re not ed.

		verb expressions from A on the opposite page that match these definitions.  ppen 4 suddenly become successful or popular success in a position of success 5 succeed in achieving something difficule failure of a person or organisation 6 happen successfully or as planned
27.2		her these phrasal verbs are mainly associated with success or with failure, by F in the box.
	1 bring off 2 come off 3 muddle th	□ 5 catch up □ 8 fall through □
27.3		in this school report with phrasal verbs from B opposite.
	SUBJECT	COMMENT
	History	Tina's work in history is not very good but she does manage to somehow.
	Maths	Tina has managed to successfullythe work she did last year in order to make excellent progress this term.
	English	Tina missed a lot of schoolwork through illness at the beginning of term, but she has managed to and is doing fine now.
	Geography	Tina has always been top of the class in geography and she has managed to this year too.
	Physics	Tina has never found physics easy but her hard work is beginning to
27.4		e sentences using the words in brackets. Write the verb in the correct form. immediately got a job in London. (WALK)
27.4	1 Miranda i	
27.4	1 Miranda i	immediately got a job in London. (WALK)
27.4	1 Miranda i 2 Jim's hard 3 The comp	work eventually brought him success. (PAY)  any is hoping to make an important deal this week. (PULL)  ever expected her singing career to meet with such instant success. (TAKE)
27.4	Miranda i     Jim's hard     The comp     Rachel ne	immediately got a job in London. (WALK)  I work eventually brought him success. (PAY)  pany is hoping to make an important deal this week. (PULL)
27.4	1 Miranda i 2 Jim's hard 3 The comp 4 Rachel ne 5 The proje	I work eventually brought him success. (PAY)  cany is hoping to make an important deal this week. (PULL)  ver expected her singing career to meet with such instant success. (TAKE)  ct may well not happen because of a lack of funds. (FALL)  it hard to make as much progress as the other kids in her class. (KEEP)
27.4	1 Miranda i 2 Jim's hard 3 The comp 4 Rachel ne 5 The proje 6 Teri finds	work eventually brought him success. (PAY)  any is hoping to make an important deal this week. (PULL)  ever expected her singing career to meet with such instant success. (TAKE)  ct may well not happen because of a lack of funds. (FALL)

### A Starting

If you	then you	example
set about something/doing something	start doing something that uses a lot of time or energy	The kitchen looked as if it hadn't been cleaned or tidied for months but Jessica set about making it look as good as new.
set out	start a journey	We set out at 7 a.m. and didn't return until after dark.
start off or start out	begin life, existence or a profession in a particular way	Yvonne started out as a model but soon realised that it was not the career for her.

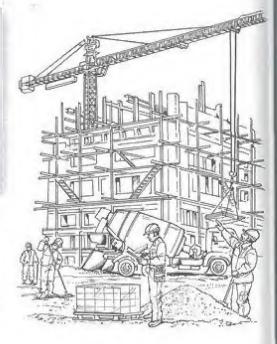
Note that the noun the outset, from the verb set out, means the beginning, e.g. There were problems from the outset and things became progressively worse.

### **B** Finishing

Joe called off<sup>1</sup> the building work his team was doing on the new company offices because he had heard that the company was going bankrupt. He knew the money was going to dry up<sup>2</sup>, so he was not prepared to continue. Most of the team immediately broke off<sup>3</sup> what they were doing but some of them first finished off<sup>4</sup> the task they were working on. Joe himself quickly polished off<sup>5</sup> the last of his paperwork and then packed up<sup>6</sup> too.

- decided to stop an activity that had already started
- <sup>2</sup> end or stop coming
- 3 stopped or interrupted
- 4 completed the last part of what they were doing
- 5 finished something quickly and easily
- 6 collected his things together, usually after finishing doing something

Suzanna is trying to give up<sup>1</sup> smoking. At first she cut down<sup>2</sup> to five rather than fifteen a day, but she is finding it very hard. She says that a cigarette helps her to wind down<sup>3</sup> after a hard day at work. She hopes her determination won't fizzle out<sup>4</sup> after a few weeks as she is very anxious not to give up<sup>5</sup> this new regime.



- 1 stop doing or having something
- <sup>2</sup> reduced the amount or number
- <sup>3</sup> gradually relax after something that has made you feel tired or worried
- gradually end or disappear, usually in a disappointing way
- 5 stop doing something before you have completed it, usually because it is too difficult

ed

s made

lifficult

28.1 Complete these comments by various people with words from the box below. Write the words in the correct form.

	set	fizzle	dry	start	give	polish	pack	cut	finish	call	break	outset	
1	Y	the			tha	as a che t it wasn in and j	't what	I want	ed to do	-			
2	Y	about	markir y 12.30	ng ther.	n. I mar	rrect tha	off	for lune	ch and d	f abou	Ė		
3	7				d	own on	sweet d	rinks to	oo, but l	'm afr	up fatty aid my e ck where		1
4	1				up. W	was gett e didn't e had no	really w	ant to		nimmuyuin.	the		

- 28.2 Answer these questions about yourself, using full sentences with a phrasal verb.
  - 1 What should you set about doing soon, even though you don't really want to?
  - 2 Can you think of something you were planning to do but then were forced to call off?
  - 3 What helps you to wind down when you are tired or stressed?
  - 4 What do you eat or drink too much of which you think you should cut down on?
  - 5 What did you once start off doing but later gave up?



'You polished off all the cakes before I got here!'

Go to the Cambridge University Press dictionaries online website at dictionary.cambridge.org and select the Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs. In the search box, enter the word start. If you do not have Internet access, look up the word start in a good monolingual or bilingual dictionary. How many more phrasal verbs can you find based on start?

## **Actions and movement**

#### Actions and movement with down and up

Down in phrasal verbs about actions can mean towards the ground, towards a lower level, or less intense.



example	meaning
She fell down and broke her arm.	fell to the ground
Can you reach that book down for me, please? You're taller than me.	get something that is above your head by reaching with your hand
Slow down! There's a police car behind us.	drive slower

Up in phrasal verbs about actions can mean towards a higher level, in a complete way, or to a greater degree.

higher/complete lower-

example	meaning
I must wrap up Stella's birthday present. Do you have any nice paper?	cover in paper, especially in order to give as a present
Can you help me to tie up this package? I don't want it to get damaged in the post.	put string or rope around something so that it is fastened together
Will you help me blow up these balloons for the party?	fill with air
Could you pick up that box and follow me, please? It has the exam papers in it.	lift using your hands
He felt very angry and tore her letter up.	tear into a lot of small pieces
Could you move up and let Christine sit next to you?	move slightly so that there is enough space for someone else
I have a bad leg. I don't want to slow you up, so go ahead and don't wait for me.	make someone or something slower

#### Other action and movement verbs

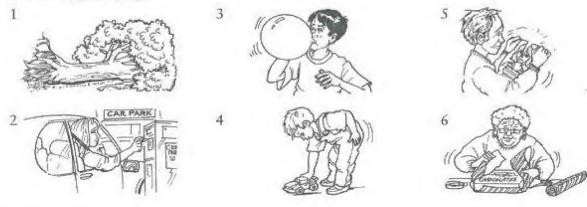
Move over! I need to sit down. [change the place where you are sitting or standing so that there is space for someone else to sit or stand]

I'm just popping out for a newspaper. Do you want anything from the shop? [informal: leaving the place where I am to go somewhere for a short time]

I reached out for the light switch but couldn't find it in the dark. [stretched my arm in front of my body, usually in order to get or touch something]

Can you help me on/off with these boots, please? [help me put on / take off a piece of clothing]

- 29.1 Read these sentences and answer the questions.
  - 1 Could you reach down that saucepan for me, please? Where do you think the saucepan is?
  - 2 Emily has just popped out of the office. Is Emily going home for the day?
  - 3 If Charlie moves up a bit, there'll be room for all of us. Where does Charlie have to move - a bit higher or closer to someone?
  - 4 If Sonia moves over, then Natasha can sit next to Nicholas. Does Sonia have to move more or less than Charlie in sentence 3?
  - 5 Tear the cloth up into small pieces and soak them in the dye for a couple of hours. Is it necessary to use scissors to make the cloth into small pieces?
  - 6 Help your grandmother on with her coat, Julie. Is Julie's grandmother about to go outside or inside?
- 29.2 Rewrite these sentences using phrasal verbs from the opposite page which have the opposite meaning to the underlined verbs.
  - 1 The children helped me to unwrap the parcel.
  - 2 Can you untie Billy's shoe laces for him?
  - 3 Put down the ball at once.
  - 4 Hurry up it's beginning to snow and there's ice on the road.
  - 5 Jill loves bursting balloons!
- 29.3 Look at these pictures and write answers to the questions about them using a phrasal verb from the opposite page.



- 1 What has happened to the tree?
- 2 What's the woman doing?
- 3 What is the man doing? 4 What's the boy doing?
- 5 What's the man doing?
- 6 What's the woman doing?
- 29.4 Choose the correct verbs to complete these sentences.
  - 1 Their heavy rucksacks ...... the climbers up.
  - 2 In the darkness of the cinema he \_\_\_\_\_\_ out and took her hand.
  - 3 I'm just going to \_\_\_\_\_ out to the post office. I won't be long.
  - 4 Your bike tyres are flat. Let me \_\_\_\_\_ them up for you.

hat

intense

ching

mplete

t is

# Destroying and reacting to destruction

#### Destroying

Here are some phrasal verbs which relate to the concept of destruction.

phrasal verb	meaning	example
fall apart	break into pieces because of being too old or too weak	Take care with this priceless old book. It's beginning to fall apart.
pull down sth or pull sth down	destroy a building or other structure because it is not wanted any more	They are planning to <b>pull down</b> the old police station and build a new one.
screw up sth or screw sth up	twist or crush paper or material with your hands	You can tell he's nervous – look how he's screwing up those scraps of paper.
tear apart sth or tear sth apart	pull something violently so that it breaks into two or more pieces	The customs officers tore the bag apart and found the hidden drugs.
tear down sth or tear sth down	violently destroy a building or other structure because it is not wanted	I can't bear to watch them tearing down the school we used to go to.
knock over sth/sb or knock sth/sb over	hit or push someone or something, usually accidentally, so that they fall to the ground or onto their side	As she was dusting the room she knocked over a vase and spilt water all over the table.
put out sth or put sth out	make something that is burning, e.g. a fire or cigarette, stop burning	We managed to put the fire out before the fire brigade arrived.
root out sth/sb or root sth/sb out	find and get rid of the thing or person that is causing a problem	The government says it will root out crime and the causes of crime.
stamp out sth or stamp sth out	get rid of something that is considered wrong or harmful	The government says it is doing all it can to stamp out the problem of drugs.

## Reacting to destruction and negative situations

## FIGHT TO SAVE VILLAGE HOME

MEANBOROUGH LOCAL COUNCIL has decided to destroy a beautiful old cottage in the village of Wareholt in order to widen the main road. However, the villagers are equally determined to fight back. The authorities want to evict an 89-year-old lady, Doris Jakes, who has lived all her life in the cottage, and seem to be bending over backwards<sup>2</sup>



to persuade her to go and live in a modern old people's home in the nearest town.

Doris does not want to move and villagers are doing all they can to see her through<sup>3</sup> her difficult time. Doris may seem old and harmless but she has turned on4 several officers from the council who have tried to get her to change her mind. There was a recent setback5 for Doris when she was told that she couldn't stay in the cottage because repairs needed to be done to the roof. However, her neighbour, a builder, quickly saw to6 it and her roof is now in good repair, so she is still in the cottage and hopes to win her battle.

- defend themselves when something or someone attacks them
- 2 trying extremely hard, often to help or please someone
- help or support someone during a difficult period in their life
- 4 criticised them very strongly or attacked them
- noun: problem which caused time to be wasted
- 6 did what needed to be done to solve the problem

in

ok.

e old

aper.

er all

efore

ur

it can

when

eone

tard.

lease

meone

period

ry ed

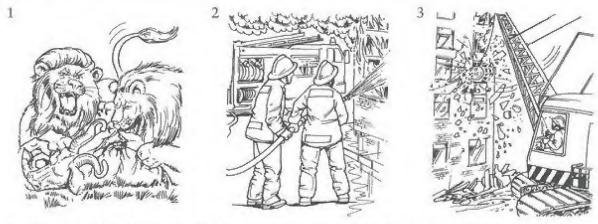
nich

to be

wasted

- 30.1 Complete these sentences using verbs from the table in A opposite.
  - 1 The border police have tried unsuccessfully to \_\_\_\_\_ out illegal immigration.

  - 3 We got a lovely old chair from my grandmother's house when she died but it was apart so we had it restored.
  - 4 She read the letter then \_\_\_\_\_\_ it up and threw it angrily into the wastepaper basket.
  - 5 I got so excited I ....... over my coffee cup and made a terrible stain on the tablecloth.
- 30.2 Which phrasal verbs do these pictures illustrate? Write a sentence to describe what the animals or people in each picture are doing, using the appropriate phrasal verb from the opposite page.



- 30.3 Rewrite the underlined parts of these conversations, using phrasal verbs from B opposite.
  - 1 Pedro: I'm sorry you didn't get the funds you applied for to do your research.
  - Gisela: Yes, well, it was a bit of a disappointment and I did waste a bit of time because of it but I've applied for a different grant, and hope I'll get that.
  - 2 Tony: Are you managing to survive without working?
    - Dan: Well, my parents have lent me some money to enable me to survive while I'm studying.
  - 3 Connie: Teachers suffered very badly under the last government their salaries fell and their conditions got worse.
    - Hilda: Yes, but they are not just reacting passively any more now and their union is much stronger.
  - 4 Ruth: Did you get much support from Mr Crombie?
    - Bob: Oh yes, he did absolutely everything possible to help me.
  - 5 Tom: I hear you experienced Lena's bad temper this morning!
    - Eric: Yes, I made an innocent comment and she just reacted really furiously.
  - 6 Olive: The photocopier's not working again. Gareth: OK, don't worry, I'll go and fix it.

# Communication

#### Managing subjects and topics

Kathryn Taylor is speaking to her colleagues at a weekly business meeting. She gives an outline of what she's going to say.

Well, there are a couple of matters which I want to bring up today for discussion. But before we get on to2 those questions, I just want to run through<sup>3</sup> the schedule for next week's sales conference, which you all have copies of. Someone asked me if we could talk about the new computer system, but I'd prefer to leave that aside4 for today and come back to5 it another time. I'm sure I don't need to spell out6 how important it is that we're all thoroughly prepared for next week's conference, so maybe we can deal with<sup>7</sup> that first. So, let's have a quick run-through8 of the schedule and discuss each event in turn.



- start to talk about
- <sup>2</sup> start talking about after discussing something
- <sup>3</sup> repeat something, usually quickly, to make sure it is correct
- 4 not discuss it so that we can discuss something else
- 5 return to discuss it at a future time
- 6 explain in detail
- <sup>7</sup> discuss or give our attention to
- <sup>8</sup> noun: a practice or repetition to make sure something is correct (from the verb run through)

Note that some of the phrasal verbs above can have the object before or after the particle:

bring sth up or bring up sth spell sth out or spell out sth

leave sth aside or leave aside sth

### Communicating and interacting with others

In these dialogues the second speaker uses a phrasal verb to repeat the first speaker's meaning.

lim: I wish they had done what they said they would do.

Yes, they should have kept to what they promised and not changed their minds. Nan:

I don't know who to ask for help or advice on this matter. It's very delicate. Freda:

Lou: Yes, it's difficult to know who to turn to, isn't it?

Lucy was extremely enthusiastic and excited about coming to work for us. Anne: Fiona: Yes, she was absolutely bubbling over with excitement when I spoke to her.

Paul: She acts as if she was the boss, telling everyone what to do.

Mia: Yes, she's always ordering people about/around.

Karen: I saw a sign saying that the car park will be closed tomorrow. Can you tell

everybody else, please?

Yes, I'll pass the news on\*. I'll send an e-mail to everyone in the office. Tony:

Harry: I see Grace said no to the job.

Yes, she turned the offer down\*. Zoë:

\*The object can also appear after the particle in these two phrasal verbs.

Look at the picture and answer the questions below.



- 1 Which speaker wants to introduce a new topic now?
- 2 Which speaker would welcome a fuller explanation?
- 3 Which two speakers want to deal with a topic later on?
- 4 Which speaker would like to repeat something to make sure everyone understands it?
- 31.2 Choose the best phrasal verbs from the opposite page to complete these sentences.
  - 1 Pm sorry, but I'm going to have to \_\_\_\_\_\_ your invitation as I'll be away
  - 2 Kate is such a bossy person, always \_\_\_\_\_\_ people \_\_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 Let's \_\_\_\_\_ for now and return to it when we've all read the report.
  - 4 How on earth did we such an extraordinary topic of conversation?
  - 5 If she has a problem, she knows she can always \_\_\_\_\_ her aunt for help.
  - 6 Jill is thrilled with her new flat she is \_\_\_\_\_ with enthusiasm.
  - 7 In this essay I plan to \_\_\_\_\_ the causes of the French Revolution from a new perspective.
  - 8 Let's try to \_\_\_\_\_ the agenda and not get distracted.
  - 9 Could you \_\_\_\_\_ a message to Lee when you see him later?

31.3

ce sure

de:

aning.

Here are some more phrasal verbs connected with communicating. Try to explain the meanings of the verbs in bold. Use a dictionary if necessary.

- 1 They won't be able to hear you at the back of the hall. You'll have to speak up.
- 2 Class 2B seem to spend most of their time in my lessons looking out of the window I just don't know if I am getting through to them or not.
- 3 Although I think most of the staff agree with me, no-one else is prepared to speak up.
- 4 The arrangements for the conference are rather complicated and I hope I'll be able to get the details across to everyone.
- 5 I'm sorry to butt in but I couldn't help hearing you mention that you come from Edinburgh.
- 6 Jack was halfway through his speech when he dried up.

# Describing people and places

### A Describing people

Natasha and I love going to posh restaurants where we have to dress up<sup>1</sup> though Natasha always finds it hard to decide what to put on<sup>2</sup>. Her favourite evening dress is long, red and tight-fitting and she has to get me to help her do up<sup>3</sup> the zip. As we live in Moscow we have to wrap up<sup>4</sup> well before going out in winter and she puts a long fur coat on<sup>5</sup> over her dress.

As soon as we arrive anywhere, she goes straight to the ladies room to freshen up<sup>6</sup>.

- put on formal or special clothes
- <sup>2</sup> put a piece of clothing onto your body
- 3 fasten
- 4 dress in warm clothes

- 5 see note 2
- brush your hair, refresh your make-up, or have a quick wash

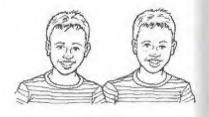
## **B** Describing places

When we arrived in the town, we were surprised to see how rundown<sup>1</sup> it looked. The streets were littered with<sup>2</sup> rubbish. However, one building in the town centre stuck out<sup>3</sup>. Its tidy window boxes and fresh paint set it apart<sup>4</sup>. There was a lovely little lamp sticking out<sup>5</sup> from one corner. When we went closer we found it was the Town Museum.

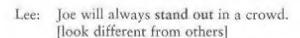
- (adjective) shabby, in a poor condition
- <sup>2</sup> (always passive) contained a lot of something, usually something negative
- 3 was noticeable because it was different
- 4 made it different, usually better, than others of the same type
- 5 coming out beyond the edge or surface

## C Comparing and contrasting people and things

Jo: I can never tell one twin from the other, can you? Mel: No, I can never tell them apart.



Her handbag and boots go very well together.



Vic: Yes, I'm sure he'll never blend in!
[look or seem the same as those around him so he is not noticed]



32.1	Complete these sentences, using a phrasal verb from A.
	1 You've had such a long journey. Would you like some time to before we go out to dinner?
	2 It's a very informal party. You don't have to
	3 Will you help me
	4 It's freezing cold today, so if you're going out, do well, and a scarf.
32.2	Correct the mistakes in these sentences. Think about the meaning as well as the grammar of the sentences.
	1 I don't want to wear my new jacket tonight. You can put on it if you like.
	2 Although the house looked rundown from the outside, it was very shabby inside.
	3 If you're going out in the snow, make sure you wrap on well.
	4 Do you think this scarf and coat get together OK?
	5 He hates the way his ears stick off.
	6 It takes me a long time to get the kids ready in the morning because Sammy and Lisa can't do on their own shoes yet.
	7 Bill and his brother are so alike – I can't see one from the other.
	8 It's a very formal party, so you don't need to dress up.
32.3	Complete this text using words from the opposite page.
	Sample of the same
	The city council are trying to improve some of the older,
32.4	Some of the phrasal verbs from this unit can be used in a metaphorical way. Try to work out the metaphorical meaning of these phrasal verbs from their basic meaning by answering the
	questions below.
	1 Military history is littered with examples of armies being destroyed because of generals or politicians making silly mistakes.
	Are there many or few examples of silly mistakes in military history?
	2 I thought Tom Hanks' performance in that film really stood out.
	Did the speaker think that Tom Hanks' performance was ordinary or special?
	3 The quality of Jan's descriptive writing really sets her work apart from that of the other students in the class.
	Is Jan's writing better or worse than that of the other students?
	4 I can't tell John's voice from his father's on the phone.
	Does John's voice sound like his father's on the phone?  5 Bringing a new actor into the series might freshen things up.
	Does the speaker think that the new actor will spoil or improve the series?
	2000 the operate than the new the new thin spen or improve the series.



nd nd ve to is.

or

it<sup>3</sup>.

ing

thers

# Describing public events

### A review of an event

## Human Circus at the London Arts Centre

The show was fully booked up for weeks, and when it opened last night, the public poured in2 and very soon the London Arts Centre was packed out3. But why? What had they come to see? Human beings who take off4 circus animals, with men in cat suits who stand in5 for the real lions and tigers. The show was put on6 by its creators to protest against traditional circuses and to send a message about cruelty to animals. The show was timed to tie in with7 the National

Protection of Animals Week. It was a good idea, but the standard of the performances was third-rate and an embarrassing number of people simply walked out<sup>8</sup> before it ended. There were some amusing moments when the performers sent up9 typical circus folk, but overall it was a dismal show. Despite the large turnout10 for the show's first night, I doubt it will attract many people during the rest of its seven-day run.

H. ACKDOFF

- if an event, person, or place is booked up, they have no space or time available for someone
- <sup>2</sup> arrived or entered somewhere in very large numbers
- 3 (adjective) very full
- 4 copy the way a person or animal behaves, often in order to make people laugh
- 5 play their role for a short period of time

- 6 organised
- 7 if one event ties in with another, it is planned so that both events happen at the same time
- 8 left the performance before it had ended because they did not like it or were angry
- 9 made someone or something seem stupid by copying them in a funny way
- 10 (noun) the number of people who came to watch or take part in an event or activity

## Other verbs connected with events

phrasal verb	meaning	example		
call off sth or call sth off	cancel something, especially because it no longer seems possible or useful	We decided to call off the sports event as we'd only sold 20 tickets.		
cram intolin somewhere	go into a place even though it is too small and becomes very full	The hall seated 200 but more than 300 crammed into it for the meeting.		
pass off	happen, especially in a good way	The demonstration passed off peacefully, despite fears that there would be violence.		
put off sth or put sth off	postpone to a later date	We had to put off the match because the rain was so heavy.		
put forward/back sth or put sth forward/back	arrange something for an earlier/later time	We've put the time of the staff meeting forward/back so more people can come.		

It is often a good idea to learn a group of phrasal verbs connected together into a story, like the review in A above. Make up your own stories for verbs you have written down in your vocabulary notebook.

od ces per it nts cus w. v's ple

FF

anned time d try id by

ty to

ets.

ere

re

eview ok.

33.1	Answer the following questions about the phrasal verbs from A, using full sentences.  1 If a performance is booked up, can you get tickets for it or not?
	2 If people are said to pour in (a place), what do you know about the number of people?
	3 If people cram into a room, what is the room then like?
	4 What kind of events might be put on to tie in with National Poetry Week? 5 Is a comedian more likely to send up politicians or post office workers?
	6 When would an actor need someone to stand in for them?
33.2	Choose the correct word to complete these sentences.
	It was so cold in the hall that a few people
	2 The class went to see the performance of Macbeth because it in well
	with the project they were doing on Scottish history.
	a) crammed b) stood c) tied d) booked
	3 We were delighted when we saw how many people had out for the
	meeting. a) turned b) taken c) stood d) walked
	4 The teacher was worried about the play her young class was putting on for the parents but, fortunately, everything off without any problems.
	a) took b) passed c) walked d) called 5 Morag is very good at off the teachers in her school.
	a) sending b) calling c) taking d) putting
	6 The meeting had to be forward to 9 a.m.
	a) made b) sent c) turned d) put
33.3	Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb from the opposite page.
	1 The concert has been cancelled because the main performer is ill.
	2 My aunt has a job going round different schools <u>substituting</u> for teachers who are sick.
	3 This year the Drama Club is going to present a performance of Hamlet.
	4 That actor is very good at <u>imitating</u> the Prime Minister.
	<ul> <li>5 The shops are usually <u>very crowded</u> during the sales.</li> <li>6 My uncle has arranged his trip to this country to <u>coincide</u> with my parents' anniversary.</li> </ul>
33.4	Complete this e-mail, using the correct phrasal verbs from the opposite page.
3311	observed this committee parasial versus from the opposite page.
	Hi, John.
	You must go and see the show that the Students' Arts Club is
	It's brilliant and it
	the moment in our literature lectures. We were lucky to get tickets as we'd been told that it
	hall along with at least 2,000 other people. The actors were so good at
	the bureaucracy in this college and Ben Hurley was brilliant at (6) the Dean.
	No-one(7) early - not even the Dean, who seemed to be enjoying himself

as much as everyone else! It's been so popular that the play planned for next week has been

(8) till next month so the Club can hold some extra performances.

# **Describing situations**

### Dialogues commenting on situations

- It's such a cold day. I wish I could get out of the bike ride Jack's planned. Javoid doing something that you should do, often by giving an excuse]
- Bill: Why don't you suggest cancelling it? I'm sure the others would also prefer not to go in weather like this.
- Sandy: I have identical twins, Flora and Florence, in my class - I always mix them up. [confuse two people or things by thinking that one person or thing is the other person or thing
- Mike: Yes, I muddle them up too. It doesn't help that their names are so similar. [confuse two people or things in your mind]
- I really don't like sharing an office with Sue she thinks the whole world revolves Meg: around her and her insignificant problems. [thinks she's more important than anyone else
- Yes, I know. I think she is one of the most self-centred people I've ever met. Anna:
- John: We've been running up against quite a lot of problems here recently.
- Rita: I know. As soon as we deal with one problem, another immediately crops up<sup>2</sup> and I now feel I can't bank on<sup>3</sup> things turning out<sup>4</sup> well in the end.
- beginning to experience
- <sup>2</sup> suddenly appears, usually when you are not expecting it
- <sup>3</sup> depend on something happening
- 4 happening in a particular way or having a particular result
- Milly: The situation at work is so annoying at the moment! There's been a small mix-up of orders and everyone is making a great drama out of it.
- Oh come on! You can rise above2 that. Tom: Just back off<sup>3</sup> and let others handle things.
- (noun) mistake caused by confusion
- <sup>2</sup> not allow something bad that is happening or is being done to you to upset you or affect your behaviour
- 3 stop being involved in a situation, expecially to let others deal with it themselves

### An island revolution

Tolidaymakers who were caught up last week in a revolution on the Caribbean island of St Maria have now returned home. The situation first hotted up<sup>2</sup> when rebels seized the Presidential

Palace. The returning tourists report that they were all thrown together3 in one of the largest hotels and were not allowed to leave until the situation calmed down4.

- (always in passive) involved in a situation, often when you don't want to be
- <sup>2</sup> (informal) became more exciting, with a lot more activity (compare with heat up which is used about food, see Units 26 and 60)
- 3 forced to be together and get to know each other
- <sup>4</sup> became more peaceful

oid

). T

nfuse

olves

and I

iving a

ifusion

you to viour

tion,

rith it

that

e of

d to

W

is

t to go

34.1 Match the statements on the left with a suitable response on the right.

I'm so worried about I've run up against what Jim is doing. that problem too. I know, but I'm sure everything All the pages are in the will turn out all right in the end. wrong order in this report. Sometimes the printer will I wouldn't bank on it. only print black and white. I know, but try to I need you here next rise above it. Monday. I must have mixed/ I do hope the bus muddled them up. Sorry. arrives on time. OK. I'll see if I can get I feel so angry about out of my trip to London. what's happened.

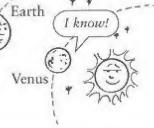
34.2 Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 When you're a teenager it's easy to think the whole world \_\_\_\_\_\_ around you and your personal problems.
- 2 There was a \_\_\_\_\_ with the reservation our room had been double-booked.
- 3 I think you should ...... off a little and let her do what she wants.
- 4 Problems at work tend to \_\_\_\_\_ up when you're least expecting them.
- 5 I hope everything ...... out well for you in your new job.

### 34.3 Replace the underlined words with phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

- 1 I was in the capital city a month before the economic crisis exploded, but things were already beginning to become agitated and more intense, even then.
- 2 He went to the country as a news reporter, but became <u>unintentionally involved</u> in the civil war which started shortly after his arrival.
- 3 I might never have met Ken, but we had no choice but to live and work together during our military service and we've been friends ever since.
- 4 The situation in Lostrania has become more peaceful now, but it's still too dangerous to go there for a holiday.
- 5 Try not to get so involved. Let them sort it out.
- 6 You can't trust him to help you.

Because she's such a big star she thinks the whole world revolves around her.



FOLLOW

Choose five of the phrasal verbs from this unit and use them in sentences about situations you have been in recently.

# Giving and getting information

## Referring to information in academic writing

This table shows phrasal verbs which are useful in academic writing.

phrasal verb	example	meaning		
come under sth	be included in or may be found in	Sanderson (1985) studied mistakes involving prepositions, tenses and other items which come under the heading of grammatical errors in second language learning.		
draw on/upon sth	use information or your knowledge or experience of something to help you do something	In designing the experiment, Fiona Farr draws upon earlier studies done in America and Asia.		
point out sth (often + that)	present a new fact, especially one that is important in the present discussion or situation	Willis (1998) points out that economic statistics often show a sharp rise just before a serious recession.		
turn to sth/sb	begin to think, speak or write about a subject	I should now like to turn to another issue which is often neglected: parental control.		

## Noticing and understanding information

In these conversations, the second person repeats what the first person says, using a phrasal verb.

Pam: I didn't fully understand what he was saying for a few minutes.

Ed: Yes, it took me a few minutes to latch on to what he was talking about.

Rory: I found it difficult to understand the full importance of the decision.

Yes, me too. I found it hard to take in its significance at first. Suraya:

We must be careful to notice any difficulties that occur once we start the project. Briony:

Winston: Yes, we'll have to watch out for possible problems.

Could you try and get some information about how to contact Keith Phelps? Pepe:

Rana: Yes, I'll try and find out his contact details.

Olivia: Iill, will you make sure that Rita has sent those faxes for me? Yes, I'll check up on her right away and see if she's done them. Till:

Aine: Don, I can't find that market report we wrote about three years ago? Don: OK, I'll try and track it down. I must have it on the computer somewhere.

### Other verbs connected with information

Sally: What's the capital of Ecuador?

Mick: Oh, Bogotá? No? Caracas? Oh, I don't know, I give up. [stop trying to think of

the answer to a joke or question

Sally: It's Quito.

I said something that upset Mo. I didn't mean to, it just slipped out. [I didn't intend to say it]

The total on the bill and the total on the credit card statement should match up, but don't [be the same]. There must be a mistake.

ing

one

ect.

of

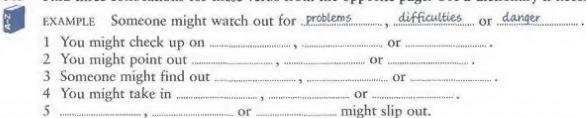
iy it]

35.1 Look at A and B. Then complete this book review using the phrasal verbs from the box below. Put the verbs into the most appropriate form.

35.2

Hannah and Bill were playing a game. Hannah had thought of a football star and Bill was trying to find who it was out. He turned his mother to but she pointed it out that she knew absolutely nothing about football. He would have to try to track the answer himself down and to watch out any clues for that Hannah might deliberately give. After ten minutes Bill still hadn't latched up on so he gave himself up and Hannah told him the answer: Ronaldo.

35.3 Find three collocations for these verbs from the opposite page. Use a dictionary if necessary.



- 35.4 Some of the phrasal verbs on the opposite page are used in a metaphorical rather than a literal way. In the sentences below these verbs are used in a literal way. What do they mean?
  - 1 As they drove through the town Gisela's father pointed out anything he thought might interest the children.
  - 2 In the scene at the end of the film, watch out for the man sitting in the café behind Leonardo DiCaprio - that's my brother!
  - 3 The dog quickly tracked the rabbit down to where it was hiding under the garden shed.
  - 4 Marian managed to slip out of the house without anyone noticing.
  - 5 Polly turned to the man on her left and started chatting to him about his work.

### Talking about problems

What's the matter? Why are you looking so worried?

Emily: I've got a few problems at work and I don't know

what to do about them.

Tom: Well, why don't we talk them over together? That might help you to sort yourself out2.

Emily: OK, thanks. Well, first of all, Julia was going to give a very important presentation tomorrow but she says she's ill and isn't going to be able to do it.

> I think she's just bottled out3 as it's for such an important client, Feeling a bit ill was just the perfect let-out4 for her. I'd do it myself but I'm busy with meetings all day.

Well, that calls for quick action if the presentation is tomorrow. You'd better do it Tom: yourself if it's so important. Just cancel your other meetings.

Emily: I guess I'll have to. The next problem is that personal belongings have been going missing from people's desks during the day.

Tom: Oh dear, You should deal with6 that problem as quickly as possible. Let's make a list of possible suspects ...

discuss something before making a decision

spend time dealing with your personal problems

3 (informal) decided not to do something because she was afraid

4 (noun) excuse or way of avoiding doing something she said she'd do

5 needs or deserves a particular action or quality

6 take action to achieve something



### Finding a solution

Now read what Emily did about her problems at work.

She faced up to the fact that she would have to do the important presentation herself, so she immediately contacted her personal assistant to ask her to see about<sup>2</sup> postponing her meetings for the next day. As for the thefts, she realised that the solution to finding the office thief lay in3 working out exactly who could have been in the office when each of the thefts took place. So she came up with a plan that enabled her to check who had been there at each of the times concerned. That narrowed down5 the suspects to two people. She questioned them both and the guilty one soon confessed.

accepted that a difficult situation existed

<sup>2</sup> deal with something or arrange for something to be done

<sup>3</sup> would be found in (from the verb lie in something)

4 thought of or suggested something that might solve a problem.

made something, usually a list or choice, smaller and clearer by removing what is irrelevant or less important

- 36.1 Match the newspaper headlines with the stories a-e below.
  - 1 NEW POLICE SQUAD TO DEAL WITH ILLEGAL IMMIGRANTS
  - 2 Garcia bottles out of contest with Paterson
  - 3 POLICE NARROW DOWN SUSPECTS IN MURDER CASE
  - 4 Education Minister to talk over problem with teaching unions
  - 5 GOVERNMENT SEEKS LET-OUT ON ELECTION PROMISE
  - a) Three men are to be interviewed in the Oxford area, following new information. Up to now there has been no real ...
  - b) If possible, ministers would like to be able to drop the pledge without angering the public ...
  - c) The team will be stationed at ports of entry and will have the task of checking anyone suspected of having arrived ...
  - d) The fight was arranged for September in Las Vegas, but now it will not take place. A spokesman for the 28-year-old ...
  - The minister said she would go into the discussions with an open mind, and that all the issues ...
- 36.2 A father is talking to his son who he thinks is very lazy. The underlined expressions have got mixed up. The particles are correct, but the verbs are incorrect. Put the correct verbs in.

It's time you faced yourself out. You're 23 now and you still haven't got a job! You've got to come up to reality. It's about time you realised that the secret of success talks in taking positive action. Over the next couple of days, I will expect you to lie up with a few ideas about how you're going to improve your situation, or else you can go and live somewhere else. Why don't you go and sort about that job Uncle Herbert offered you at his factory? I've offered to help deal things over with you, but you never seem to want my help. Yet you don't see with things yourself. Sometimes I think you're just a waste of space!

- 36.3 This is how Tom and Emily's conversation in A continued. What do you think the five underlined phrasal verbs mean?
  - Well, it's just dawned on me that the thefts have always happened on the top floor. So it couldn't be anyone who never goes up there. That actually rules out quite a lot of people.
  - Tom: Think some more about exactly where and when things were stolen and you'll probably find that the answer jumps out at you.
  - Thanks, Tom. It's good to work through things with you! It really helps me to sort Emily: things out!

Choose five of the phrasal verbs from this unit that you would particularly like to learn, Look them up in a good dictionary, for example the Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs, and copy out any useful example sentences that you find there.

list

5

it

she

ffice ts

OF

## **Decisions and plans**

### Thinking about things and deciding

If	you could	meaning  wait until the next day before you decide what to do about it manage without it		
someone offered you money for your bike but you weren't sure if you wanted to sell it or not	sleep on it decide to take the money and do without the bike			
you were offered a good job in a town far away from where you live	weigh up the pros and cons  run it by your parents or a good friend (informal)	think carefully about the advantages and disadvantages involved before making a decision tell your parents or a good friend so that they can give their opinion make decisions or plans about something you will do or might do in the future think carefully about what might happen in the future		
you were getting tired of paying rent to live in a flat	plan ahead and start saving money to buy a house think ahead, and consider how you would like to live in 10 or 20 years from now			
someone offered you the chance to invest all the money you've saved in a company they were starting	think it over and tell them your decision at a later date think through the possible risks of giving all your savings away	think carefully about the idea before making a decision think carefully about the risks and consider the possible consequences		

### B

### Other verbs connected with planning and deciding

We should allow for possible delays on the motorway and leave an hour earlier. [consider or include something when making plans or judging a situation

Having to pay extra for all our meals at the hotel was something we didn't bargain for. [expect something to happen and be prepared for it]

I'm sure he'll opt out of doing the bungee jump at the last minute. [choose not to do something you have planned]

I'm sure he'll chicken out of doing the bungee jumpt at the last minue, [informal: decide not to do something you have planned because you are frightened]

I have so many things on in the evenings that it would be too much to be on the school committee too. [have arrangements to do things]

My wife seems to be completely set against moving to the country. [be opposed to]

I could do without having my family coming to stay this weekend. I just want a quiet weekend. [informal: something you say when something is annoying you or causing problems for you, because your situation at that time makes it difficult for you to deal with it]

37.1	Complete this dialogue using verbs or particles from A.				
,,,,	Sarah: Kenny:	Do you think you're going to take that job in New York, Kenny?  Well, I've been thinking it			
	Sarah:	So how long do they give you to (5) through all the implications and come to a decision?			
	Kenny: Sarah:	Unfortunately, I have to make up my mind by next week.  Well, why don't you			
37.2	Answer	these questions about yourself, using full sentences.			
	<ul> <li>1 When you have an important decision to make in your personal or your professional life who would you usually run it by first?</li> <li>2 If you are worried about a situation at work, do you usually think it over immediately or decide to sleep on it first?</li> <li>3 You have enough money for only one of these – a special holiday or a car. Which would you prefer to do without?</li> <li>4 In what ways do people plan ahead for their retirement?</li> <li>5 What sorts of things might people chicken out of doing?</li> </ul>				
37.3	Rewrite these sentences using the word in brackets, so that they keep the same meaning.				
	2 I reall 3 He wa 4 We di 5 My so	ould take into consideration the fact that he is still only young. (ALLOW) y can't help you as I have a lot of things to do today. (ON) ants to stop having art classes at school next year so he can do extra music. (OPT) dn't expect Mark to turn up at the party with a lot of his friends. (BARGAIN) on is determined not to go to university. (SET) Id really prefer it if we didn't have people coming for dinner this evening. (WITHOUT)			
37.4	Correct	the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.			
	2 I have 3 In jud 4 If we 5 Let's r 6 I coul 7 In dec	going to do the parachute jump but I chickened off in the end. on a lot of things this weekend. ging her work, you should really allow her inexperience for. buy the flat, we'll have to make without holidays for a few years. run our plan through Sarah before we make our final decision. d make without having to go to a conference this weekend. siding how much holiday money we need, we should allow the fact for that food is expensive there.			

dems

sion iend, inion

t ht

ght

ror

not

# Disagreeing

## Disagreement at work

There was an outcry at work today because the boss announced that he wanted us all to take a pay cut. We had a union meeting at lunchtime and we all agreed to stick together<sup>2</sup> and refuse to agree to his requests. Our union leader spoke out<sup>3</sup> very clearly to our boss and to the local press this afternoon. We're sure that the boss will have to give in4 in the end. Although in some ways I'd rather stay out of5 it myself, I have no choice but to support my fellow union members.

- (noun) public expression of anger and disapproval
- <sup>2</sup> support each other, especially in a difficult situation
- <sup>3</sup> publicly expressed an opinion, usually to oppose or criticise something or someone
- 4 finally agree to what someone wants after a period of refusing to agree
- 5 not become involved in an argument or discussion

### Private disagreements

Read Cilla's letter to an agony aunt, Esther.

Dear Esther,

Please can you help me. My big sister and I always used to be good friends, but we fell out! when I started going out with a new boyfriend. Now she is always trying to put me down<sup>2</sup> and it is really beginning to get to<sup>3</sup> me. My boyfriend usually tries to stick up for1 me, but then she just laughs at him too. Two years ago my boyfriend used to go out with my sister, but surely she doesn't hold this against5 us? What can we do? Cilla

- 1 argued with each other and stopped being friends
- <sup>2</sup> make me feel stupid or unimportant by criticising me
- 3 make me feel upset or angry
- 4 defend me when I am being criticised
- <sup>5</sup> like or respect them less because they have done something wrong or something that she does not like

### Back

The verb back is often used to refer to the position you take in an argument or decision.

up sb (or back sb up) = to say that someone is telling the truth down = admit that you are wrong or have been defeated, often because you are forced to

out = decide not to do something that you were going to do or had agreed to do

Examples:

When I make my point at the meeting, please back me up.

The government backed down on its controversial plans to increase income tax. Iill had agreed to come sailing with us tomorrow, but she's backed out.

e

iticised iuse rong tot like

38.1		dio interview a protester is angry about a plan to build a new road through some woodland. Complete the interview using verbs from the opposite page.						
		Reporter: Now, Mr Humfry, you have(1) out recently against the new road plan. Do you think your protest campaign can change the decision?						
	Protester:	otester: Well, there are a number of different groups opposed to this plan, and if we (2) together we can force the authorities to rethink.						
	Reporter:							
	Protester:	This isn't a small protest. There's been a massive public						
	Reporter:							
	Protester:	Not violent protest, no. We have always emphasised to our members that if violence erupts they should						
	Reporter:	And you think that, in this way, the government will be forced to						
	Protester:	Yes, I believe they will simply have to listen.						
38.2	Use a phrasal verb from the opposite page to complete these dialogues, so that Speaker B agrees with Speaker A's statement.							
	B: Yes, 2 A: I hea B: Yes, 3 A: Petra B: Yes, 4 A: I thin B: Yes, 5 A: Jo is B: Yes, 6 A: We s B: No, 7 A: I thin	rently, Gary agreed with Liam's version of the events.  It kim and Francis have had a serious argument. It seems they've						
38.3	Complete these sentences, using a phrasal verb from the opposite page.							
	1 Harry says he won't come to the fancy dress party with me but I'm sure he'll eventually							
	<ul> <li>2 Why have Jana and Sarah? They used to get on so well together.</li> <li>3 I just don't have enough money for the holiday we were planning in Canada. I'm going to have to</li> </ul>							
	4 My best 5 The bos	friend and I have always, through good times and bad tin s's constant criticisms are really me and I'm going to start for another job.	ies.					

## Verbs with talk and put



If you	then you	example		
put across/over sth or put sth across/over	explain or express something clearly so that people understand it easily	He's an excellent teacher. He puts his subject across/over so well.		
put forward sth or put sth forward	state an idea or opinion, or suggest a plan, so that it can be considered or discussed	The company has <b>put forward</b> a plan to build a new hotel in the city centre.		
put sth to sb	suggest an idea or plan to someone so they can consider or discuss it	Your proposal is interesting, I'll put it to the committee tomorrow.		
talk sb around/round	persuade someone to agree with you or to do what you want them to do	Dad won't let me go away with my friends, but Mum might be able to talk him around/round.		
talk sb into sth/doing sth	persuade someone to do something which they may be unwilling to do at first	She talked me into going jogging every day before work.		
talk sb out of sth/doing sth	persuade someone not to do something	My sister wants to leave college but my parents are trying to talk her out of it		

## Other verbs connected with persuading people

PRIME MINISTER CALLS FOR WAR ON DRUGS Minister brushes aside2 opposition to new tax plan UNION BOSS BRINGS EMPLOYER ROUND TO PAY DEAL Doctors press for shorter working hours CITY ROPES IN LOCAL INDUSTRY TO SUPPORT ENVIRONMENT PLAN

"I was just having the media on6, and they fell for7 it," says star who faked his own death

- says he thinks a particular thing should be done, usually in order to change or improve a situation
- <sup>2</sup> refuses to listen to what someone says, or refuses to think about something seriously
- 3 persuades someone to agree with you or to do what you want them to do
- 4 try to persuade someone, usually someone in authority, to give you something or to allow something to happen
- 5 (informal) persuades someone to help you with something, especially when they do not want to
- 6 (informal) persuading someone that something is true when it is not, usually as a joke
- <sup>7</sup> were tricked into believing something that is not true

t of

s his

plan ntre.

it it

y talk

every

ut my t of it.

AL

death

situation

rant to

39.1	Choose the correct particle	e to complete each sentence.	
-		w proposal the Pr	rime Minister.
	a) forward b) to	c) across/over	
		t 4 a.m., but my parents talked	meit.
	a) into b) round	c) out of	
		alk your dadlend c) out of	ling you the money to buy a car yet
	4 The new manager has s	ome interesting new proposals	that he wants to put
	at the staff meeting ton		
		c) across/over	
		od at putting his ideas	and I found it impossible to
	follow his talk.		
		c) across/over	
			be able to talk him
	a) into b) around/	round c) out of	
39.2	Write the phrasal verbs pr	esented on the opposite page in	to one of these categories.
	presenting an opinion	successfully persuading	people's reactions to persuasion
	or trying to persuade		
39.3	Read the sentences below	and answer the questions about	t them.
	1 The headmistress brush	ed aside the parents' criticism to	hat the children were being given
	too much homework.		
	How did she take the p	arents' criticism?	
	2 Brenda was just having	Derek on when she said she wa	as going to work in the USA.
	Where is Brenda going		
		in to help organise the school	
		that they wanted to help organi	
		ory that all her money had been	n stolen.
	What do we learn abou		
	5 The Party is calling for		
	Does the Party want co	nstitutional reform or not?	
39.4	Complete the text using pl	arasal verbs from the opposite	page. Sometimes there is more than
	one possible answer.		
	If you're a politician	(1) change, you'	re trying to
			g. You will probably try to do this
			ble and you'll doubtless also try
			that you want. Indeed, you will
	(5)	all the supporters you can find t	to help you
		(6) voting for your proposals.	

# Praising and criticising

### A

### Praising and criticising

Max: Now that you've been in our company for a month, what do you think of the other people in your department?

David: Well, there is one outstanding person and that's Jessica. She's a first-class personal assistant. She stands out from the others.

Max: That's good to hear. What about Rick? What do you think of him?

David: He's very able, but I wish he wasn't such a show-off<sup>3</sup>! I don't know who he's trying to impress.

Max: It's the female staff, I think. He always shows off4 more with women around.

David: Yes, I guess he's just a bit screwed-up<sup>5</sup>. But otherwise his performance is fine – his work certainly measures up<sup>6</sup>.

Max: So there are no real problems then?

David: Well, I am very worried about Sally. She seems to be screwing everything up<sup>7</sup> at the moment. I'd had such good reports of her that it really surprised me. I tried asking her what she was playing at<sup>8</sup> but she just burst into tears.

Max: Why don't you have a word with Jessica? Perhaps she can find out what's wrong.

1 (adjective) extremely good, or of a very high standard

2 is much better than other people or things

3 (noun) person who tries to impress in an annoying way

4 tries to make people admire his abilities or achievements in a way other people find annoying

5 (adjective, informal) confused, unhappy about himself and his life

6 is good enough

7 (informal) making a mistake with everything, or damaging or spoiling everything

8 (always used in the continuous form; always used in questions) doing; when you ask what someone is playing at, you are surprised or angry about their behaviour

### B

### Ways of criticising

If you lay into someone, you criticise or attack them in an angry way.

The headmaster really laid into the boys for arriving in school so late.

If you pick on someone, you choose one person from a group of people to criticise or treat unfairly, especially when they are smaller or weaker than you.

Mark was a quiet, studious child and the big boys in the class used to pick on him.

If you run down someone or something, or run someone or something down, you criticise that person or thing, often unfairly.

Pam's big sister is always running her down even though Pam is far cleverer than her.

If you hit back, you criticise or attack someone who has criticised or attacked you. Jack is constantly criticising his sons – I'm sure they'll hit back eventually.

If you take out something on someone or take something out on someone, you treat someone badly because you are upset or angry, even though they have done nothing wrong.

Of course Mary is upset at losing her job but she shouldn't take it out on her family.

If you rub something in (informal), you talk to someone about something which they want to forget because they feel bad about it.

I know it was all my fault. I just wish everyone would stop rubbing it in!

AE.	
W/	
7	
-	

frying

- his

at the sking

ong.

wing

Dur

treat

cise

meone

vant to

- In the dialogue in A opposite there are three phrasal verbs which have related noun or 40.1 adjective forms. Write down the phrasal verbs and their related forms and explain the connection between them.
- 40.2 Read these remarks by different people and then answer the questions below by writing the correct name in the box.



defend myself against all the criticisms, so I did.

I decided I had to



I couldn't believe how aggressively she attacked me and criticised me.

Everyone was treating me badly because of what happened, but I had no part in it.



He chose to attack me because I'm junior to him and can't defend myself.

Laura



I wanted to forget the whole incident, but he insisted on reminding me of it.



He was always saying negative things about me to other people; it's just not right.

Iulia

- 1 Who felt that someone was rubbing it in?
- 2 Who felt that someone was always running them down?
- 3 Who felt that they had to hit back?
- 4 Who felt someone had picked on them?
- 5 Who felt that people were taking it out on them?
- 6 Who felt that someone laid into them?

- 40.3 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.
  - 1 Dan won the prize as his short story was clearly the best. (STOOD)
  - 2 Molly got the sack because her work just wasn't good enough. (MEASURE)
  - 3 What on earth does Gemma think she's doing she's behaving so oddly? (PLAYING)
  - 4 I wish Ed wouldn't try to impress all the time! (SHOW)
  - 5 If you make such a stupid mistake again, you'll lose your job. (SCREW)
  - 6 I know I was stupid but please don't remind me. (RUB)
  - 7 Joe's father spoke very angrily to him for scratching his new car. (LAID)
  - 8 Why does everyone always blame me for everything? (PICK)

# **Exclamations and warnings**

The exclamations and warnings on this page are all typical of informal, spoken English.

### Reactions and responses

Ahmed: I just wanted to ask you a couple of questions.

Fine. No problem. Fire away! [something you say to tell someone you're ready for

them to start asking you questions, or to start speaking

Hilary: Oh, everything is so awful at the moment.

Petra: Oh, lighten up, will you! You'll make everyone as miserable as you! [something

you say to tell someone to stop being so serious or annoyed)

Vera: Joanna wants you to give a talk to her students next Monday.

Dan: Joanna? Next week? Hang on / hold on! Who's Joanna? Is she someone I know?

[something you say when you are confused or surprised by something and you

need time to think]

Kylie: I feel like killing Roger! I'm never, ever going to speak to him again!

Steady on! I know he acted stupidly, but he's not a bad person really, [something Lorna:

you say to tell someone that you think what they are saying is too extreme

Gary: You see, what I want to say is, well, I mean, it's like, er, it's difficult to say it.

Ken: Come on! Spit it out! What is it? [come on something you say to encourage

someone to do something you want them to do, especially to hurry up, to try harder, or to tell you something; spit it out something you say to encourage

someone to tell you something which they do not want to tell you]

Lou: Some of the students are very poor, and can't afford textbooks.

Kate: Poor! Come off it! They have enough money for mobile phones. [something you

say to tell someone that you do not believe them or that you disagree with them]

### Commands and warnings

example	comment
Step on it! We're late,	said to someone, especially someone who is driving, when you want them to go faster
Watch out! / Mind out! / Look out! There's a car coming!	said to tell someone to be careful so that they can avoid danger or an accident
Go on! / Hurry up! We've not got all day!	said to encourage someone to do something or to tell someone to do something more quickly
You're doing very well! Keep it up!	said to encourage someone to continue to do something, especially to continue to work hard or well
[On the phone] <b>Hold on.</b> I'll get Mike for you. It's best if you speak to him.	said to ask someone to wait a moment
Belt up! I'm trying to listen to the radio.	said angrily to someone to tell them to be quiet

Many of the exclamations here are very direct and may be considered impolite if you say them to someone you don't know very well. Learn them so that you understand them when you hear or read them, but use them only with very great care.

## Evarciene

you

1em

hen

bic

ing.

read

- 1		EXCICIS	CS					
1.	41.1	Divide the exclamations and warnings on the opposite page into these groups:  a) those that you could use to your boss or teacher b) those that you could only use to close friends						
dy for	41.2	Choose the	best response fr	om those in t	he box to fit	each of the	se dialogues.	
- 11		Come off it	Lighten up!	Steady on!	Mind out!	Hold on!	Come on! Spit it out!	
ing		I Bart: Candy: Bart:						
ou?		2 Paul: Teacher:	I'm sorry, I just haven't had time to finish my essay. It's taken me ages to get hold of the books I needed for it.  There are plenty of copies in the library. And you could have told me sooner if you had really been having problems.					
hing		3 Tanya: Matt:	Can I speak to your sister, please?  Pill just go and see if she's in yet.					
		4 Bella: Sonya:	I'm never going to get all this work done. I hate my job.  It won't take long if you hurry up a bit.					
У		5 Anna: Look at the picture on the side of that lorry! Tom: You're going to hit the car in front of you!						
		6 Pat: Mark:	That was a str				best workers.	

with my work. How am I doing?

41.3 Answer the following questions.

7 Jim:

Rob:

1 Which exclamation on the opposite page is connected with the idea of shooting a gun?

Now I've been in the office for a month, I'd like to know if you are pleased

Very well! You'll soon be getting a promotion.

- 2 Which exclamation is connected with the idea of pressing your foot down on the accelerator pedal of a car?
- 3 Which exclamation is connected with the idea of forcing out the liquid in your mouth?
- 41.4 Divide the exclamations from the box below into pairs that have approximately the same meaning. What is the basic meaning for each pair? Describe a situation when each pair of expressions might be used.

Watch out!	Hold on!	Mind out!	Hurry up!	Step on it!	Hang on!
Francis Comer	I TOTAL STILL	I living the state of	, / up.	ocop on ion	a seed of second

# The classroom and learning

### Things the teacher says

With all the verbs in these examples, the particle can either go before or after the object, e.g. give in your homework or give your homework in.

The teacher says ...

Give/Hand in your homework tomorrow, please.

> Rose, give/hand out these worksheets, please.

Jo, rub out what's written on the board, please.

Work out the answers without using a calculator.

Cross out any rough work when you have found the answer,

> Take care not to miss out any of the exam questions.

The teacher wants:

- ... the students to give her their work the next day.
- ... Rose to give each student a worksheet\*.
- ... Jo to clean the board.
- ... the students to do some maths without using calculators.
- ... the students to put a line through any rough work.
- ... the students not to forget to answer any of the exam questions.

\*Sheets of paper that everyone in a class or lecture receives a copy of are called handouts. These might be worksheets (i.e. have exercises on them) or they might contain a text or some reference material.



## Other classroom phrasal verbs

Tamara was ill for a month and so she fell behind with her schoolwork. [failed to do her schoolwork by a particular time] She is going to find it difficult to catch up. [reach the same standard as the rest of the class]

Pupils often play up when a teacher is new or inexperienced. [behave badly]

Although Maggie had done good work throughout the year she messed up her exam. [did her exam badly

The teacher cleared the books from the table and spread out the map. [opened out something that was folded)



Listen carefully to instructions in English from your teacher and note down any phrasal verbs they use. If you are not sure what they mean, ask them for an explanation.

t,

: her cy.

rd.

some

a line

rk.

of the

hese ence.

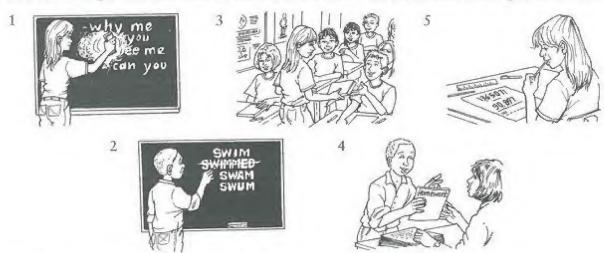
er same

did her

ething

use.

Look at these pictures and write a sentence to describe what the student is doing in each case.



- 42.2 Would Tim's parents be pleased or not if their son's teacher told them the following?
  - 1 Tim was playing up in class last week.
  - 2 Tim messed up his homework.
  - 3 Tim has been helping a classmate who has fallen behind.
  - 4 Tim has caught up with the rest of the class.
  - 5 Tim didn't hand in his homework.
  - 6 Tim missed out some important work.
- 42.3 Complete this story, using appropriate phrasal verbs from the opposite page. Write the verbs in the correct tense.

- Rewrite these sentences using more informal phrasal verbs instead of the underlined verbs.
  - 1 Students often misbehave, when they are bored in class.
  - 2 The teacher erased the new words from the board and then tested us.
  - 3 We have to <u>submit</u> our registration forms for the exam on Friday.
  - 4 I usually omit my middle name when I am filling in forms.
  - 5 Some people were distributing leaflets about a demonstration in the town centre.
- 42.5 Answer these questions using full sentences.
  - 1 Why are you often asked to cross out rough work in an exam?
  - 2 If a teacher gives out a sheet listing all the kings and queens of Britain, is that a worksheet or a handout or both?
  - 3 Why do most pupils carry an eraser in their pencil cases?
  - 4 How easy would it be for you to work out how many euros are equal to 250 US dollars?
  - 5 What do you think is the reason for pupils playing up in class?

## Student life: courses and exams

### **Enrolling on courses**

Look at this information leaflet for students at Welney College. Then look at how David explains the system informally to a friend, using phrasal verbs. The numbers (1.2 etc.) help you to match the phrasal verbs with their meanings.

## Welney College 🐠



Promoting excellence

- . Autumn term ends! on 18 December, Spring term begins? on 8 January.
- Students wishing to register for<sup>3</sup> spring term courses should do so before 12 December.
- · Any student not completing a course4 will not receive credits for that course.
- . Course essays must be submitted in a final form<sup>5</sup> seven days before the end of a course.
- . Students failing more than 30% of their total coursework will be expelled from the college.

A. Jobsworth, Academic Administrator

### David:

- We break up1 on 18 December and go back2 on 8 January, so we've got about a three-week break
- But we've got to sign up3 for courses for next term before 12 December.
- You have to go to all the lectures; if you drop out4 before the end, you don't get the credits.
- And you have to write up5 your course essay and submit it a week before the course ends.
- If you fail 30% or more of your courses, they throw you out6 of the college.

### Before an exam

### Six tips for exam success

- Keep your reading up! during the term so that you have less to read just before the exam.
- Brush up on2 some of the things you learnt a long time ago; they may possibly come up3 in the exam.
- Don't just mug up4 on the key points you need for the exam and hope that you'll scrape through5 with little effort.
- · On the other hand, don't try to do everything. Swotting up6 on everything you have done all term means you will have to revise a lot of useless things too.
- Concentrate on polishing up7 the most important areas and your best skills.
- Don't fool yourself that you'll pass the exam on the basis of what you've picked up8 during the lectures and classes. You will need to revise!

- continue to do something
- <sup>2</sup> practise and improve your skills or your knowledge of something, usually something you learned in the past but have partly forgotten
- 3 if a question or a subject comes up in an exam, that question is asked or questions about that subject are asked in the exam
- 4 (informal) quickly try to learn the main facts about a subject, especially before an exam (often + on)
- 5 manage with a lot of difficulty to succeed in something
- 6 (informal) learning as much as you can about something, especially before an exam (often + on)
- <sup>7</sup> practising and improving your skills or your knowledge of something
- 8 learnt by absorbing it rather than studying it

1

dp

k2 on

oreak.

ext

COD

ay and

hey

OHE

Ť

i an

cam

un

e an

ceed

311

or

- 43.1 Rewrite these sentences using the words in brackets, so that they keep the same meaning.
  - 1 I'm going to register for a course in statistics next year. (SIGN)
  - 2 Several students did not complete the Moral Philosophy course. (DROP)
  - 3 Our course finishes on 20 June. (BREAK)
  - 4 He was forced to leave university after one term. He'd done no work at all. (THROW)
  - 5 I can't come out tonight. I have to have my essay finished for tomorrow. (WRITE)
  - 6 My next term at college starts on 12 September. (GO)
- 43.2 Which of these would make most students happy and why?

breaking up dropping out being thrown out scraping through mugging up swotting up

43.3 Choose the best phrasal verb from the opposite page to complete this letter.

43.4 Correct the ten phrasal verb mistakes in this paragraph. Either the wrong particles or the wrong verbs have been used.

Dick hardly worked up at all for his exams. He brushed over on the history of the French Revolution, but no questions on the French Revolution got up in the exam. He was afraid that he would be thrown off university for failing his exams. However, he did just manage to scratch through them and so he will be in college when we return back next term. He has promised to try to keep through with work next year as he is planning to sign in for a couple of quite difficult courses, including business studies. He'll have to polish over his French because the business studies course involves spending a term in France working in a business. He thinks he can just lift up the language when he gets there, but I think he should study it before he goes because he only has school French.

HOTTOS

Go to the Mini dictionary at the end of this book and find more phrasal verbs with break. Is there a common theme in their meaning? If so, what is it?

# Student life: reading and writing



### Reading

Now, your homework for the weekend. Can you all please read up on air pollution for next week. You'll find a good chapter in your textbook on page 40, but you don't need to read it all - just dip into2 it. Now please turn over3 the worksheet on your desk. Jane, will you please read out4 the paragraph at the top of the sheet?

- read a lot about a particular subject in order to learn about it
- 3 turn a page so that you can see the other side
- 4 read aloud
- <sup>2</sup> read small parts of a book or magazine

### Writing

phrasal verb	meaning	example
write out sth or write sth out	- write something again in a better or more complete way  - write something on a document, e.g. a cheque or a prescription, so that it can be used	Do your essay in rough first and then write it out. The doctor wrote out a prescription for some sleeping tablets.
note down sth or note sth down	write words or numbers, often so that you do not forget them	Note down your password somewhere safe.
jot down sth or jot sth down	write something quickly on a piece of paper so that you remember it	Jack jotted down Sue's address on a scrap of paper.
scribble down sth or scribble sth down	write something very quickly on a piece of paper	The lecturer spoke so fast that I could only scribble down a few notes.
make out sth or make sth out	write all the necessary information on an official document, e.g. a cheque, an application, a ticket	If you have time to wait, we could make out your airline ticket now.
fill in sth or fill sth in	write all the necessary information on an official document, e.g. a form	Please fill in this registration form and return it by 18 September.
fill out sth or fill sth out	write all the necessary information on an official document, e.g. a form	Let's fill out this questionnaire together.

## Improving a piece of writing

Your essay's good but I think it would be better if you cut out this paragraph here. Also it'd be a good idea to add a paragraph summing up2 your main points at the

end. This paragraph here is a bit strong - why not tone it down3 a bit? And your point about crime crops up4 in several places - why not deal with it in just one paragraph? And you only touch on5 the issue of government control. Surely that deserves a bit more space? In fact I really think you should try to set the whole thing out6 better! Son: Why don't you just write it then, Dad!



- removed
- describing briefly the most important points
- make it less critical or offensive
- 4 appears

- 5 mention briefly (also touch upon)
- 6 give all the details or explain clearly, especially in writing

er side

hen

ition

in a

:ould

ı and

ere.

y not isue fact I

44.1	Match the verbs on t	he left with an object from the right. There may be more than one answer
	1 scribble down	a) a subject
	2 make out	b) a book or an article
	3 fill in/out	c) the page
	4 jot down	d) a rough draft of an essay
	5 note down	e) the times of the trains to London
	6 write out	f) the answer you have written
	7 read up on	g) a form or a questionnaire
	8 dip into	h) a few very quick notes
	9 read out	i) someone's phone number on a piece of paper
	10 turn over	j) a cheque for €250
44.2		s from exercise 44.1 to complete these sentences. Write the verbs in the may be more than one possible answer.
		en I have to what I've written in class.
	2 I haven't read the	e book in detail. I just it.
		r just managed to quickly the registration number it drove away at high speed.
	4 I've made some i	notes for my speech; now I'm going to in full.
		the cheque to 'Wilson and Co.' please?
		orms to for this visa application. (two answers)
		the departure times for flights to Rio de Janeiro.
		international law for the exam.
		and let's see what's on the next page.
		your address in case I forget it.
44.3		essay, and the teacher's comments in the margin. Then complete what y to the student using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.
	1 Delete this sentence.	The problems of pollution in the world cannot be
	2 You only mention	solved overnight, since smoke from factories is a
	this very briefly,	necessary evil, and cars and planes will always be noisy.
	but it's an	
	important issue.	Cleaning the environment is expensive.
	3 This is too strong!	Jumbo jets make more pollution and noise than other
	<sup>4</sup> This point has	planes. People's health is affected. Governments are
	already appeared	completely stupid on questions of the environment.3
	once in your essay.	It is very expensive to improve the environment.
	5 Summary needed!	
	337773	
	And have ab	out a line through this sentence; you should
		nds too suddenly. You should(5) your argumen

# Work: jobs and career

## A Talking informally about your work or career

Well, to get ahead<sup>1</sup> in a job like mine you have to be prepared to take on<sup>2</sup> a lot of responsibility and work long hours.

- be successful in your job
- <sup>2</sup> accept a particular job or responsibility

When the boss first took me on<sup>3</sup> he filled me in<sup>4</sup> on what the job involved, but he didn't tell me I would have to do so much travelling!

- 3 began to employ me
- 4 gave me the information I needed in order to do something

Well, I stood down<sup>5</sup> as Chairman in 1998, and Mary Wilmott took over<sup>6</sup>. As you all know, she has carried out<sup>7</sup> some important reforms in the company and has been very successful.

- 5 left an important job or official position so that someone else can do it instead
- started doing a job or being responsible for something that someone else was doing or was responsible for before you
- done or completed something, especially something important

I'm 60 now, so I think it's time for me to step down<sup>8</sup> and hand over<sup>9</sup> to a younger person.

- 8 leave your job, especially so that someone else can do it
- 9 give someone else responsibility or control

### B More work-related phrasal verbs

Ellen: Frances, do you think you could fix up a staff meeting for me? [provide or

arrange something for someone]

Frances: Yes, I'll do that. When were you thinking of?

Ellen: Well, let's pencil it in for Friday morning and see whether everyone else is free

then. [arrange for something to happen on a particular date, knowing the

arrangement might be changed later]

Keith: Why are you back home already? Did you knock off early today? [informal: stop

working, usually at the end of a day]

Bob: I wish I could say that. The truth is I've just been laid off. [lost your job because

there is no work for you to do, from the verb lay off someone]

Keith: Oh, I'm sorry to hear that.

Veronica: Did you ever follow up that phone call you had with the oil company? [do

something in order to make the effect of an earlier action or thing stronger or

more certain

Jim: No, I really should do something about it.

Mona: It's amazing how much we can get done when we all pull together, isn't it? [work

as a group in order to achieve something]

Ricky: Yes, although sometimes it's also good if people just leave you to it. [informal:

go away from someone so that they do something by themselves or so they can

continue what they are doing]

pility

n

sition ad isible 28 e you :cially

36

stop

ause

or

work

3 : can

- 45.1 Write down phrasal verbs from the opposite page which are:
  - a) connected with finishing work (four answers)
  - b) connected with making arrangements (two answers)
- 45.2 Complete this text, using verbs or particles from the opposite page.

r n r S	ill has been	lown, he'll(9)
Vrit	e suitable answers to the questions below, using phrasal v	erbs from the opposite page.

- 45.3
  - 1 Shall I tell you what's been going on while you were on holiday?
  - 2 Could you deal with the letters we've had in response to our advert? Certainly, I'll
  - 3 Could you arrange an appointment for me with the bank manager? Yes, I'll
  - 4 Why did you stand down as Director? Well, I've been doing it for years and I thought it was time to
  - 5 Can we arrange a meeting for some time next week? Sure, why don't we
- 45.4 Answer these questions about your own working life, using full sentences.
  - 1 What kind of tasks do you have to carry out each day?
  - 2 At what time do you knock off each day?
  - 3 Do you know anyone who has ever been laid off?
  - 4 What qualities do you think you need to get ahead in the job that you do?
  - 5 What did you do to get taken on for the job that you now have?

## Being busy

Nick: I haven't seen you for ages. Have you been a bit tied up1 at work?

Yes, I've been incredibly busy. I was away for a conference and the work just piled up2 while I was away. I've been snowed under3 ever since. Although I slave away4 till seven at night and even work at weekends, I still can't seem to catch up with5 everything!

Nick: Sorry, I asked!

been so busy that you are unable to see or speak to anyone else or go anywhere (informal)

<sup>2</sup> became more and more (used of something unpleasant, e.g. work, bills or debts)

3 had so much work to do that I have problems dealing with it

4 work very hard with little or no rest

5 do something you did not have time to do earlier

### Working hard

Ray: How are things going for you at work at the moment, Stella?

Stella: Well, we're branching out into a new product line - children's clothes - so I'm pretty busy. At the moment I'm working on<sup>2</sup> some new designs for leisurewear. We're working towards3 having a complete range for children of all ages. It's quite difficult but I'm sure I'll develop some good designs if I keep at4 it.

Well, you always were good at sticking at5 things. Ray:

Stella: Well, I'd certainly rather do a project myself than have to chase up6 other people to make sure they're doing what they promised to do. But sometimes you have to do that just to keep things moving along?.

Ray: Do you think you could squeeze in<sup>8</sup> lunch with me sometime?

Stella: Mm, possibly, but not till next week.

That's fine. But don't try to wriggle out of 9 it at the last minute! Ray:

starting to do something different from what you usually do

<sup>2</sup> spending time working in order to produce something

3 trying hard to achieve

4 continue working hard at something difficult or something which takes a long time

5 continuing to work hard at something even though it is hard or takes a long time

6 ask people to do something that they said they would do but have not done yet

developing in a satisfactory way

manage to see someone or do something when you are very busy and do not have much time available

9 avoid doing something that other people think you should do, often in a dishonest way (informal)



Mr Benbow stuck at his job in the glue factory for 25 years before retiring.

When phrasal verbs have very strong visual images associated with the verbs they are made from, for example squeeze in, stick at and wriggle out, try to picture the meaning of the verb alone to help you remember the meaning of the verb and particle together.

46.1 Which phrasal verbs in A opposite do these pictures make you think of? Write the correct phrasal verb under each one.

:d 4 till

pretty

icult

e to

lo







- 46.2 Use the phrasal verbs from exercise 46.1 to rewrite these sentences. Use each phrasal verb once only.
  - 1 I've been working incredibly hard in a restaurant to pay for my studies.
  - 2 Sorry, I was incredibly busy all last week, so I couldn't go to any of the meetings.
  - 3 Paperwork has just increased and increased recently. I don't know where to start.
  - 4 I'm sorry I can't do the report this week. I'm just so terribly busy.
- 46.3 Complete these sentences using the correct particles.
  - 1 I've been working all day \_\_\_\_\_ this essay and I still haven't finished it.
  - 2 Whenever there's a difficult task to do she always tries to wriggle \_\_\_\_\_\_ it.
  - 3 Why should we slave \_\_\_\_\_ till we're 65 and get nothing but a small pension?
  - 4 Could we squeeze \_\_\_\_\_ a quick meeting before lunch?
  - 5 I must catch ....... housework before my visitors arrive this weekend.
- 46.4 Each line of the text below contains one mistake with a phrasal verb. Cross out the incorrect word and write the correct word in the box next to that line.

I need to chase out Gerald's report so that we can keep things moving away with the European sales campaign. I know he's been working in it and I know he's been working upwards the same goals as all of us to branch up into new markets in Europe, but he's not good at sticking for things and you need to keep in it with campaigns like this one.

_

UP

re glue 12.

for

# Money: salaries, bills, payments

### Formal and informal

Many phrasal verbs have more formal, non-phrasal equivalents.

phrasal verb	more formal equivalent	meaning	example
take out sth or take sth out	withdraw	get money from a bank	I took €100 out at the ATM yesterday.  You may not withdraw more than €500 in 24 hours.
cut back sth or cut sth back	reduce	decrease the amount of money that is being spent on something	The government is cutting back on the education budget. The education budget is to be reduced next year.
pay back sth/sb or pay sth/sb back	герау	pay someone the money that you owe them	Lend me ten pounds and I'll pay you back tomorrow. Poor countries find it very difficult to repay their debts.
come to sth	total	be a particular total when amounts or numbers are added together	The bill for the meal came to \$86 all together. Healthcare expenditure totalled \$120 billion last year.

## Paying bills and debts

I won't pay off the mortgage on my house until 2024. [pay back all the money you owe]

My tax bill has arrived. I have to pay up by 30 December. [pay money that you owe, especially when you do not want to]

My kids ran up a phone bill of £400! [caused you to owe a large amount of money]

I know I already owe you €20. Can you lend me another 20 and I'll settle up with you when I get paid next week. [pay someone the money that you owe them]

## Other verbs connected with money

I've been offered a chance to go to New Zealand next year. So I've started saving up already. I'm trying to set aside2 a fixed amount each month so that I'll have enough.

> It was a terrible holiday. Everything went wrong. And it cost us \$900, but I guess we'll have to just write that off<sup>3</sup>. We won't get it back<sup>4</sup>.

They were giving away<sup>5</sup> free tickets at the Concert Hall today and I got one. Then I was in a bookshop buying a magazine and I picked up6 a book on Italian cookery at a knockdown7 price. It had been reduced from \$20 to \$15.

- keeping money so that I can buy something with it in the future
- <sup>2</sup> use money for one purpose and no other purpose
- 3 accept that an amount of money has been lost
- 4 it will not be returned
- giving something to somebody without asking for payment
- 6 bought something when you have gone to a place to do something else
- 7 (adjective) very cheap

lled

when

n buy

ture

and

honcy

ody

11.1

- 47.1 Rewrite these sentences, using the word in brackets so that they keep the same meaning.
  - 1 The suspected criminal withdrew all the money from his bank account and has not been seen since. (TAKE)
  - 2 As his girlfriend is in Australia, he has a huge phone bill every month. (RUN)
  - 3 The bill for the books we ordered totalled \$40.85. (COME)
  - 4 I lent him €100 a year ago and he still hasn't repaid me. (PAY)
  - 5 Now that I've lost my job we're going to have to reduce what we spend on our weekly trip to the supermarket. (CUT)
  - 6 If you pay the restaurant bill with your credit card, I'll give you my share later. (SETTLE)
- 47.2 Complete this e-mail using words from the box.

Hi Marc,	
I've got son	e exciting news. At last I've saved(I) enough money to come
and visit yo	in Canada. What's more, my parents have agreed to write
the money	borrowed from them when I was at university. They think they will get it
maeimememem	(3) one day when I'm rich and famous! Anyway, I've been setting
narmanananananan	(4) money for the trip all year and at last I can afford it. I've heard you can
get tickets a	t knock(5) prices on the Internet so I'll try and do that.
Looking for	ward so much to seeing you soon,

47.3 Choose the correct word from a-d to complete the text below.

> My financial situation is in a bit of a bad way at the moment. First of all I owe my brother some money and he says I have to pay \_\_\_\_\_\_(1) before the end of the month. I've (2) up so many other bills that I don't know how I'm going to pay them (3). I wanted to sell my car, but it's so old and rusty that I can't even (4) it away. At work they're threatening to \_\_\_\_\_(5) back our opportunities for overtime, I don't know what I'll do then.

> > d) cut

- 1 a) back d) out c) off b) up c) run 2 a) cut b) saved d) picked 3 a) back b) up c) off d) out 4 a) give b) settle c) take d) write
- 47.4 Answer these questions, using full sentences.

5 a) pay

1 What, if anything, are you saving up for?

b) knock

2 How much money do you usually take out at a cash machine?

c) set

- 3 What would you expect the bill for a night in a hotel in your country to come to?
- 4 Do you have any big debts and, if so, when do you hope to pay them off?
- 5 What sorts of things might you pick up at a flea market?

# Money: buying and selling



### Shopping and buying goods

Tom: That leather bag's £120. Shall I see if he'll sell it cheaper?

Lily: Yes, why don't you try and beat him down to £100. [make someone reduce the price of something]

Iill: Did you manage to get that car you wanted for a lower price?

Sandy: Yes, the dealer knocked 10% off the price because I offered to pay cash.

[reduced the price by a certain sum]

Nora: This is a nice old vase. Is it an antique?

Beryl: Yes it is, but I picked it up for €30. It was a real bargain.

[bought it at a cheap price]

Fran: It would be nice to buy something for our teacher now that the course is ending.

Paco: Yes, we should club together and get her some flowers or a nice gift.

[put our money together as a group]

I'm not going to buy stuff at those gift shops again. They really ripped me off Larry:

last time.

[informal: cheated me by making me pay too much]

Sue: Yes, a lot of those tourist shops are a real rip-off. You can get the same things in

> ordinary shops for half the price. [noun: from the verb rip off]

Martin: Shall we buy the TV set here? It's a big store.

Pilar: No, let's shop around a bit. They may be cheaper somewhere else.

[look at different shops and compare prices]

Aaron: Mick is selling Madonna's autograph for \$20. Should I buy it?

Ritchie: If I were you I'd snap it up. It could become very valuable in the future.

[slightly informal: buy it quickly because the price is good]

Meg: The car failed its annual test yesterday. Two of the tyres are badly worn.

Simon: Oh no! Now we have to fork out for two new ones!

[informal: pay for something, especially when you do not want to]

## Other buying verbs

Learn these verbs in pairs to help you remember them.

We should stock up on fruit and vegetables and not buy so much junk food. [buy large quantities of

We should never skimp on healthy foods. [spend too little money on or use too little of]

We splashed out [spent a lot of money on something we didn't really need] on lots of new furniture last month and ran up [caused ourselves to have to pay] a huge bill.

They're selling off printers at half price at the computer store. [selling to get rid of them] Shall we go and look at them right away in case they sell out? [have none left]



Sometimes you meet pairs of phrasal verbs which you can link together into one sentence or a pair of connected sentences, as in section B on this page. Try to learn as many pairs of phrasal verbs in this way because it will help you to remember them more easily.

skimp on

pick up

sell off

sell out

g.

in

W

r of ; way

48.1	Fill the gaps with appropriate verbs from the opposite page.
	1 He wanted \$2000 for his old car but I managed to him down to \$1800.
	2 We're going to have to out a lot of money this year; the kitchen needs a new floor and the roof needs to be repaired.
	3 We mustn't on the food and drink for the party. We don't want our friends to think we're poor!
	4 I up a nice old book about my village in a second-hand bookshop. It was only two pounds.
	5 The tickets for the rock concert are bound to out really quickly. I think we should go to the box office first thing in the morning.
48.2	Answer the questions below using phrasal verbs from the box.
	splash out (on sth) club together stock up (on sth) knock off shop around
	<ul> <li>to make sure you have enough food in the house?</li> <li>Your sofa and armchairs are beginning to look very old. You have some money you'd like to spend. What could you do?</li> <li>You want to buy your friend's bicycle but you think the price is too high. What could you ask your friend to do?</li> <li>You want to buy a DVD player, but the prices seem to be very different for the same model in different shops. What should you do?</li> <li>Your classmate Sara is ill in hospital and you think it would be nice to send her a bunch of flowers from the whole class. What could you suggest?</li> </ul>
48.3	<ol> <li>Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences. There is one mistake in each sentence.</li> <li>She became an Internet addict and ran into a huge telephone bill.</li> <li>We were ripped out in that restaurant. They charged us for four desserts when we only had two.</li> <li>He sold over his share in the business and went travelling round the world.</li> <li>When he offered me his tennis racket for only \$10 I snapped it off because it was still in excellent condition.</li> <li>We had to fork for a new washing machine because our old one broke down.</li> </ol>
48.4	Answer these questions about nouns formed from phrasal verbs. Use a dictionary if necessary.
A-Z	1 On the opposite page, you are shown the noun form of one of the phrasal verbs. Which one is it?
	2 Look at the box below. Which of these phrasal verbs from the opposite page also have noun forms, and if so, what do the noun forms mean? Use a dictionary if necessary.

## Starting and doing business

Tim Benson started up his own business in his first year at university. He set up2 a small company hiring out3 bicycles to other students. He was very successful and claims that his profits ran into4 thousands of euros a month, a lot of money for a student. As a spin-off<sup>5</sup> he used

to sell cycling clothes and equipment to the students and that also was a good earner for him. 'I was really happy with that set-up6', says Tim, 'as I loved cycling myself."



- created (a business or other organisation)
- 2 started (a company or organisation)
- 3 allowing people to use for a short time in exchange for
- 4 reached a particular level
- 5 (noun) extra business in some way related to an earlier successful business
- 6 (noun) business arrangement

## Ups and downs in business

Read this conversation about Ken's business activities.

- Doesn't Ken own his computer business any more?
- Rita: No, he sold up1 and used the money to buy a small chain of clothing outlets2.
- Really? Has he done well?
- Rita: Yes. His turnover3 was so big he managed to take over4 a jewellery company that had been a success but was winding down5 because of bad management. They were no longer able to pay for the upkeep6 of the stores.
- Bob: Wow! How much did he have to pay of his own money?
- Well, he poured a lot of money into<sup>7</sup> it he puts it at<sup>8</sup> around a million but he Rita: saved it from going under9 and it's making a profit now. In fact he says the profit on wedding rings alone runs to 10 several millions. He says he's glad he decided to risk the takeover11.
- So he's a rich man now then? Bob:
- He's very rich, but you know something? He still drives around town in that old car Rita:
- sold a business (or house) in order to go and do something else (or live somewhere else)
- 2 (noun) shops
- 3 (noun) amount of money or business made by a company in a period of time
- 4 get control of a company by buying most of its shares
- 5 gradually reducing the amount of work being done until it closes completely
- 6 (noun) cost or process of keeping a building or something in good condition
- provided a lot of money for something over a long period
- B roughly calculates at a particular amount
- <sup>9</sup> failing financially
- reaches a particular amount, usually a large
- (noun) act of gaining control of a company

Business English uses a number of specific phrasal verbs that are either rarely used in other contexts, e.g. to start up, to sell up, or are used in other contexts with different meanings, e.g. to turn over, If you have a particular interest in Business English, make a special collection of these as you come across them.

other

e for ige for

evel in

ın ness

t had 10

t on k the

car

lding

over

πt

large

bany

i,

hem:

49.1	<ol> <li>The components</li> <li>The components</li> <li>The take announced</li> <li>A companient of the components</li> <li>Mr Dona business</li> <li>The light</li> </ol>	ny spokeswoman said profits were now running into six figures. She confirmed aldson has decided to sell up and retire to the south of France after 45 years in the
	b) Compan c) Compan d) Company e) COMPAI	NY FOUNDER TO REALISE BIG PROFIT AFTER LONG CAREER  ny announces eight million euro profit  y benefits from decades-old science  to close overseas factories  NIES WILL JOIN TO MAKE HUGE CORPORATION  ny financial crash was inevitable
49.2		nese dialogues using phrasal verbs from the opposite page so that the second ees with and repeats more or less what the first speaker says.  The government has put huge sums of money into agriculture.  Yes, they've been
	2 Lotta: Jan: 3 Ruth: Jamie:	I seem to remember Hugh Morris began his business about ten years ago. Yes, you're right. He  I would estimate that they've lost around five million euros this year. Yes, I'd
	4 Pauline: Lianne: 5 Helen: Fiona:	I hear Macron are establishing a branch in Oslo. Yes, they're
49.3	Complete tl	nese sentences using words from the box.

	The out to have been presented by
	Big companies often small ones.
2	These shops power tools by the hour.
3	Last year their was \$10 million.
4	A new sportswear has opened on the edge of town.
5	I couldn't work there; the didn't appeal to me at all.
6	The cost of rebuilding could a million pounds.

# **Telephoning**

### A

### Conversations on the telephone

Client: Can I speak to Mr Jones, please?
Secretary: I'm afraid Mr Jones is in a meeting.

Client: OK, I'll call back later.

Client: Could you put me through2 to Kathryn Parker, please?

Receptionist: May I ask who's calling?

Client: It's David Brown. We were talking a few minutes ago

but got cut off3.

Sarah: It's a very bad line, isn't it?

Paul: Do you think someone is listening in4

on our conversation?

Sarah: I think one of the kids must have picked up the

extension upstairs. Jan, are you there? Put the phone down<sup>5</sup> please.

telephone someone for the second time, or ring someone who rang you earlier

<sup>2</sup> connect a telephone caller to the person they want to speak to

3 were stopped from continuing the phone conversation because the connection broke

4 secretly listening to a conversation

<sup>5</sup> put the part of the phone that you speak into back into its usual position

### B

### Conversations about telephoning

Husband: Have you found out about costs for repairing the central heating yet?

Wife: No, I phoned around a couple of companies. [telephoned several people, often

in order to find out information]

Husband: And?

Wife: No-one was there so I left messages on the answering machines. But none of

them have got back to me yet. [talked to someone, usually to give them

information that you were not able to give them before]

Husband: Well, if they don't ring back [telephone someone who rang you earlier] soon,

you'd better try phoning up [telephoning] a few more places.

Hotel guest: If I want to dial out, do I have to dial anything first? [use a telephone to call

someone not in the same building]

Receptionist: Yes, dial 9 and wait for the tone. Then you can dial an outside number.

Luigi: Do you find it hard to get through to your parents in Tonga? [manage to talk

to someone on the telephone]

Marie: Not usually, but it's very expensive so I don't call them often. My mum talks

to me and then puts my dad on [give someone the telephone so that they can speak to the person who is on it], and he then puts me on to all my brothers and sisters. I can never get them to hang up [end a phone call by replacing the part of the phone that you are speaking into, usually suddenly] and I don't want to ring off [end a phone call by replacing the part of the phone that you

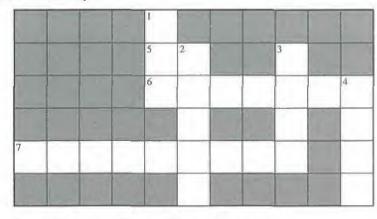
are speaking intol either.

Husband: I don't feel very well today. I've got a terrible headache.

Wife: Oh dear. You'd better ring in sick then. [telephone someone at your place of

work to explain why you are not there

- V
- 50.1 Rewrite the underlined words using a phrasal verb from the opposite page.
  - 1 Hotel operator: If you want to make a call outside of the hotel, you have to dial 9 first.
  - 2 It's difficult to get a connection to the customer helpline in the mornings.
  - 3 I'm sorry, he's out right now. Can you phone again at about five o'clock?
  - 4 Carole telephoned the office to say she's not feeling well.
  - 5 Joanne: Hi Uncle Jack, it's Jo. How's everything?
    - Uncle: Hi! Fine thanks. Just a minute, I'll give the phone to your aunt so you can tell her all the news.
  - 6 I'll phone you with my response in a few days.
- 50.2 Complete the word puzzle.



### Down

- 1 Can I speak to Mr Walsh again please? I was speaking to him and we were off.
- 2 Hi, I've been meaning to \_\_\_\_\_\_ you up for ages, but I couldn't find your number.
- 3 Hello, are you still there? Hello? I think she's just \_\_\_\_\_ off.
- 4 Whoever it was, they just \_\_\_\_\_ up; it must have been a wrong number.

### Across

- 5 Why don't you phone Karen \_\_\_\_\_ and invite her to the party.
- 6 Could you put me \_\_\_\_\_\_to the sales department please?
- 7 I can hear funny noises. Do you think someone's .............................. in on our call?
- 50.3

Here are some more phrasal verbs which you may need to use in connection with telephoning, especially when using a mobile phone. What do you think they mean? Use a dictionary if necessary.

speak up hold on break up switch off charge up

- 50.4 Use the phrasal verbs from exercise 50.3 to answer these questions. Use each verb once.
  - 1 How could you explain to a friend why they couldn't reach you on your mobile phone when they tried to?
  - 2 How could you tell someone you're speaking to on a mobile phone that the signal is very bad and you have difficulty understanding what they're saying?
  - 3 How could you ask someone to speak louder because there's a lot of background noise?
  - 4 How could you ask someone if they have enough electrical power in their mobile phone before they go off on a trip?
  - 5 How could you ask someone to wait and not put the phone down while you have to interrupt the call for some reason?



often

e of

ion,

call

talk

tlks can ters g the

't : you

of

# **Feelings**

### Feelings go up and down

Up and down phrasal verbs connected with feelings often refer to positive (up 1) and negative (down 1) emotions and emotional events, or a more emotional intensity (up1) or less emotional intensity (down 1).

(	JP	
example	meaning	
Brighten up, will you! You're depressing everyone!	suddenly look or feel happier	
The film <b>cheered</b> us <b>up</b> considerably.	made us start to feel happier	
There's no point in being hung up about it; there's nothing we can do.	becoming very worried about something and spend a lot of time thinking about it (informal)	

DO	OWN	
example	meaning	
She <b>broke down</b> when she was told the bad news.	was unable to control her feelings and started to cry	
Calm down! Losing your temper won't solve the problem.	stop feeling angry, upset, or excited	
I need some time to cool down before I can see him again.	become calmer	

### More verbs connected with feelings - examples from horoscopes

#### SCORPIO 含水金米金米金米金米金米金米金米金米金米

There's something you need to tell someone that is making you very angry, so don't bottle up your emotions. If you do, there is a danger that you will tear yourself apart2.

- not allow yourself to show or talk about your feelings, especially feelings of anger and sadness (informal)
- <sup>2</sup> make yourself feel very unhappy

#### VIRGO 食术食术食术食术食术食术食术食术食术食

A letter or e-mail will make your heart beat faster, but don't get carried away3; proceed carefully. At work things are getting better, and you should jump at4 the chance of a new challenge which will be offered to you soon.

- become so excited about something that you do not control what you say or do and you forget about everything else
- 4 eagerly accept a chance to do or have something

#### LEO 食术食术食术食术食术食术食术食术食术食术食

You may be unwilling at first to take part in an activity suggested by a close friend, but talk about it, and you may warm to5 it a bit more. In fact, the idea could soon grow on6 you and you'll find yourself doing something you never expected to do and taking to7 it enthusiastically.

- become more enthusiastic about an idea
- 6 you like something more and more, although you did not like it at first (informal)
- 7 starting to like it

#### GEMINI 含木食木食木食木食木食木食木食木食木

You feel for8 a female colleague at work who seems to have so many problems and hangups9, but be careful; you could soon become more involved than you want to. She will have to pull herself together 10 sooner or later; it's her life, not yours.

- <sup>8</sup> feel sorry for someone who is unhappy or in a difficult situation
- 9 feelings of embarrassment or fear about something, often when it is not necessary to feel that way (informal)
- 10 become calm after being very upset or angry

itive

n

a'll

lly.

M

to

ning,

- 51.1 Read the sentences below. Decide which people are experiencing positive feelings and which are experiencing negative feelings.
  - 1 Jill broke down when the doctor told her the results.
  - 2 George is beginning to take to the idea of moving to Boston.
  - 3 Sue has more hang-ups than anyone else I know.
  - 4 Henry should calm down or he'll make himself ill.
  - 5 Mike has cheered up a lot since I last saw him.
  - 6 Mary doesn't seem to be able to pull herself together.
  - 7 Ken is very inclined to bottle up his emotions.
  - 8 Anna has brightened up considerably since this morning.
- 51.2 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.
  - 1 The news that I didn't have to do the exam after all made me feel happier.
  - 2 Look, Joe. Try to be less angry! Getting angry won't solve the problem.
  - 3 When she heard of her friend's death she lost control of her feelings and wept.
  - 4 She worries so much about silly little problems at work.
  - 5 I wish you'd be a bit more cheerful! You're making me feel depressed!
- Match the statements on the left with the most appropriate response on the right.
  - 1 That new quiz show is growing on me now.
  - 2 Would you like to try snowboarding?
  - 3 Tom's marriage problems are tearing him apart.
  - 4 Sam is so hung up about failing his exam.
  - 5 If I win the lottery, I'll buy a flat in New York and one in Rio and ...
  - 6 I wish Sue would brighten up a bit.

- What more can we do to cheer her up?
- I know I do feel for them both.
- Yes, I'm beginning to warm to it too.
- Don't get carried away!
- Yes, I hope he pulls himself together
- before his next attempt.
- Sure, I'd jump at the chance.
- 51.4 Complete this letter, using verbs or particles from the opposite page.

Dear Angela,
I hope things are OK with you.
We've been having quite a difficult time here. Jim lost his job. After 20 years there he (2)
him apart and he has found it very hard to
However, thank goodness, he does seem to be brightening
course. Mary was very angry at the way her father had been treated - she
(6) for him so much. She's cooled
as she realises there is no point in getting too
has been great at trying to(9) us all up through all this.
Hope to hear from you soon.
Jenny

Read an English horoscope page, either in an English magazine or on the Internet. Note down as many phrasal verbs as you can. Use a dictionary to help you understand the meanings and write down a sentence to help you remember the new expressions.

# Relationships

#### Talking about relationships

Dear Auntie Jo, I think I've fallen for the new guy who's just started work in our office. He fitted in 2 at once. He and I get along3 really well, but he hasn't asked me out4 yet. What should I do? Miranda Buxton

- (informal) become very attracted to
- <sup>2</sup> felt happy in a group of people because he was similar to them
- 3 like each other and are friendly
- 4 invited someone to go to a place like a cinema or a restaurant, usually to start a romantic relationship

#### Dear Auntie Jo.

I've been going out with my boyfriend for ten months now and we're planning to get married next year. But last week we fell out<sup>2</sup> over something really stupid. He heard a male friend of mine tell me my hair looked nice and he thought it was a chat-up3 line. He got so jealous and wouldn't speak to me. Do you think a minor falling-out like this is a bad sign for our future marriage, or am I worrying too much? Tanya Wilson

- having a romantic relationship with
- <sup>2</sup> had an argument that damaged our relationship
- 3 (noun, informal) a way of talking which suggests you are sexually attracted to someone and want them to be attracted to you (from the verb chat up)
- 4 (noun) argument (from the verb fall out)

#### Being attracted to someone

If you	then you	
hit it off with someone	immediately like and become friendly with them (informal)	
pair off with someone	start a romantic relationship with them	
chat someone up	talk in a way that shows them that you are sexually attracted to them and you try to make them attracted to you	
go for a particular type of person or thing	like that type of person or thing	
turn someone on	make them interested, often sexually	



There are a lot of phrasal verbs which deal with relationships and how people get on with each other. Look occasionally at a problem page in a newspaper or magazine and note down any new ones that you find.

52.1 Auntie Jo, the agony aunt, is replying to some of the letters she gets. Fill the gaps in her replies.

# You say you're worried because you and your fiancé have (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ out. Well, take my advice, a temporary (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ with someone you love is not the end of the world. And your boyfriend shouldn't worry even if another man does try a (3) \_\_\_\_\_\_ up line with you; if you love each other such silly things will never threaten your marriage.

Your letter about your office party is typical of many I get. Everybody tries to (4)
party is typical of many I get. Everybody tries to (4) off with somebody and a lot of the evening is spent in (5) people up in the hope of starting something with them. But be careful. By accepting the first guy who asks you, you could end up with a reputation for always flirting and never
(4) off with somebody and a lot of the evening is spent in (5) people up in the hope of starting something with them. But be careful. By accepting the first guy who asks you, you could end up with a reputation for always flirting and never
with somebody and a lot of the evening is spent in (5)
the evening is spent in (5)
people up in the hope of starting something with them. But be careful. By accepting the first guy who asks you, you could end up with a reputation for always flirting and never
people up in the hope of starting something with them. But be careful. By accepting the first guy who asks you, you could end up with a reputation for always flirting and never
starting something with them. But be careful. By accepting the first guy who asks you, you could end up with a reputation for always flirting and never
starting something with them. But be careful. By accepting the first guy who asks you, you could end up with a reputation for always flirting and never
first guy who asks you, you could end up with a reputation for always flirting and never
could end up with a reputation for always flirting and never
for always flirting and never
halas saulaise and shon sho
being serious, and then the
really nice guys won't go
(6)
you, and nothing you do or
say will ever turn them
(7) !

Dear Jody,
You say you've
(8)
for the new student on your
course, but that you're
afraid he won't
(9)
in with your gang of friends.
I suggest you
(10)
him out and then meet up
with your friends later in
the evening. If they don't
(11)
then the choice is simple:
either you lose him and keep
your friends, or you keep him
and perhaps lose 'friends' who
aren't really true friends.

- 52.2 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.
  - 1 My friend and I fell away last week because she thinks I'm in love with her boyfriend.
  - 2 The new student was finding it difficult to fit on, as he was older than the other students.
  - 3 When George met his new colleague he really fell to her and now he talks about her all the time.
  - 4 Barry and David hit it of immediately when they were introduced.
  - 5 That horrible man over there was trying to talk me up. Ugh!
- 52.3 Rewrite the underlined parts of this private diary, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

# S MON Met a really beautiful girl at the disco - talked to her to try to attract her but didn't invite her to go out. I'm useless! 6TUE thave become very attracted to the new girl in my maths class. She's adapted well to the group. 7WED Nigol started a romantic relationship with Kari at the party last night. Why am I jealous?

Sally Wilkes really makes me feel sexually

attracted. She's gargeous!

# No success with the girl in the maths class. Don't think I'm the type she likes or feels attracted to! 10 SAT Been having a romantic relationship with Angela for six months now, but still can't stop chasing other girls! 11 SUN Greg and Clare seem to be enjoying a very friendly relationship these days. They think no one has noticed! tha-ha!

# Relationships: problems

Here are some more letters to Auntie Jo, the agony aunt from Unit 52. Read these letters from a popular young people's magazine along with Jo's replies on the right.

#### Dear Auntie Jo,

My boufriend and I have just split up after a year together. For the first six months everything was great, but then we just seemed to drift apart? I didn't really want to finish with him, but he wanted to break off our relationship. Should I ask him if we can start again and try to rediscover the magic of those first six months?

Linda (aged 19)

#### Dear Auntie Jo.

My parents broke up! last year and I've been depressed ever since. I see each of them regularly, and I love them, but I feel they have let me down2. Is there anything I can do to persuade them to make up3 and live together again so that my sister and I can have a normal life like other kids?

Brian (aged 16)

#### Dear Auntie Jo.

A couple of years ago my uncle ran off with! another woman. She was much younger than him, in fact she was only 20 and he was 52. It ended in disaster. He left her last year and returned to his wife. But the neighbours all stare at him and laugh at him; it seems he'll never live it down2. He's doing his best to settle down3 and be a good husband and uncle again, but I feel so unhappy for him. What can I do?

Iona (aged 17)

When two people grow apart5, it's usually because they are basically different. The fact that he broke off with you means he recognises that you don't really have a lot in common. You're young. Let him go!

- ended a relationship or marriage
- gradually become less friendly and the relationship
- end a romantic relationship (informal)
- end a relationship
- gradually become less friendly, often because you do not have the same interests and opinions any more
- ended a romantic relationship with someone

Brian, a marriage break-up4 is always very sad, but there's not much you can do. They are adults and they have made their own choices. You feel you're missing out5 on a normal young person's life, but you're not alone. A third of all marriages in Britain end in divorce. Be brave and talk to your friends about it.

- their marriage or relationship ended
- <sup>2</sup> disappointed me by failing to do what they agreed or what I expected them to do
- 3 forgive each other and become friendly again
- 4 (noun) the act or event of breaking up
- 5 not doing or getting something you would enjoy or that would be good for you, or not having something other people have

People can be very cruel, lona, and your uncle may have to settle for a lot more embarrassment before the neighbours forget what happened. The best thing you can do is to show your uncle that you love him and support him and show him that you accept him, and all his faults.

- secretly left a place with someone in order to live with them or marry them, especially when other people think this is wrong
- stop feeling embarrassed about something you did by waiting until people forget about it
- 3 start living in a place where you intend to stay for a
- 4 accept something, often something that is not exactly what you want, or is not the best

they

h6 lot

up

1 do me

ed.

Of

/6

can rt

TS.

d

ra

#### Match the problems 1-6 with the responses a-f.

My husband and I are so busy at work that we seem to be drifting apart. What should I do?

I always seem to pick boyfriends who let me down. What can I do?

2 How can I finish with my boyfriend without hurting his feelings too much?

5 I'm 35. Isn't it time I was thinking of settling down?

3 What can I do to get over the break-up of my marriage? I still love my wife.

I've decided never to get married. Do you agree with my friends that I will be missing out on a lot?

- a) Become friends first then you should know what he is really like before you take things any further.
- b) The right time can arrive at any age when you meet the right person.

c) Why not take up some new hobby together?

d) Why make such a major decision about your future now? You may feel very differently in a few years' time.

e) Time should slowly make things better for you.

- f) Could you try to make him want to split up with you first?
- Rewrite these sentences replacing the phrasal verbs with another phrasal verb from the opposite page, so that the sentences keep the same meanings.
  - 1 My sister and her husband broke up last year.

2 Milly was very upset when her boyfriend broke off with her.

- 3 We had been drifting apart for a long time, so it was better to separate properly.
- 53.3 Complete these sentences using appropriate phrasal verbs from the opposite page.
  - 1 Whenever I quarrel with my girlfriend I can't wait to \_\_\_\_\_\_ again.
  - 2 We were all very shocked when Emily left her husband and \_\_\_\_\_ her boss.
  - 3 After leaving school my best friend got a glamorous job travelling all over the world, but now all she wants to do is get married and \_\_\_\_\_ somewhere.
  - 4 I am absolutely sure that I can trust him and that he will never \_\_\_\_\_ me
  - 5 It was so embarrassing when I spilt tomato soup all over my boss I'm sure I'll never it
  - 6 I think that children who are educated at home \_\_\_\_\_\_ on the opportunity to make friends of their own age.
  - 7 Sally is determined to marry someone who is both handsome and rich and she'll never less.
  - 8 I can't understand why my girlfriend decided to ....................... our relationship.

Look at the problem pages in an English language magazine. Copy down any sentences that you find containing phrasal verbs.

## Secrets and conversations

#### Secrets

Angela: You're keeping something from me, aren't you?

Steve: Well, sort of. Jill really opened up2 to me last night. She poured out3 a lot of things.

but made me promise not to tell anyone and I can't go back on4 my word.

Angela: Go on. You can tell me, I won't let on5 to Jill or anyone else.

No, I can't. In the course of her outpouring<sup>6</sup> she owned up<sup>7</sup> to something quite Steve:

serious and I really can't tell you about it. You'd be far too shocked!

not telling me about something

<sup>2</sup> started to talk more about herself and her

3 talked very honestly about what was making her unhappy

4 not do something that you promised you would do

<sup>5</sup> tell someone about something that was supposed to be a secret

6 (noun) long and emotional expression of what she was feeling

<sup>7</sup> admitted she had done something wrong

#### Conversations

B

phrasal verb	meaning	example
keep on at sb	talk to someone about something many times, usually to complain about something they have done or not done	I wish you wouldn't keep on at me about my handwriting! No-one else has problems reading it.
talk down to sb	talk to someone as if they were less clever than you	The best teachers don't talk down to pupils but speak to them as equals.
play down sth or play sth down	try to make people believe that something is not very important or is unlikely to happen	There is no point in trying to play down the incident – too many people saw exactly what happened.
pin down sb or pin sb down	make someone give you exact details or a decision about something	He's the most infuriating man – you can never <b>pin</b> him <b>down</b> to a date on anything.
have it out with sb (informal)	talk to someone about something they have said or done that has made you angry in order to improve the situation	Once Sally had had it out with Kim about the housework, things got much better.
wind up sb or wind sb up (informal)	tell someone something that is not true in order to make a joke or to annoy them	Stop pretending that you've lost your sister's new jacket. It's not fair to wind her up like that.
mouth off (informal)	talk about a subject as if you know more than everyone else or to complain a lot about something	Robert is always mouthing off about his boss behind his back, but he'd never say anything to his face.
shut (sb) up (informal)	stop talking or making a noise, or make someone else do this	Would you please shut up while I'm trying to concentrate on these papers.

You can sometimes fix phrasal verbs in your mind by writing them in true sentences about a person you know or an experience you've had.

ings

0

nwc

;an

ıd

ıt his say

54.1		e remarks by different people and then answer	er the questions below by writing the	
	George: Dermot: Michael: Yolanda: Yvette: Gina:	I'm determined to have it out with my pare My sister is always mouthing off about son I think they were trying to play down the w The boss seems to have gone back on her w Huh! My brother has owned up at last! It's I felt my roommate was trying to wind me	nething. I wish she'd shut up. hole affair. ord. about time!	
		annoyed because someone talks about subject an everyone else or someone complains a lot		
		ought someone told them something that was make a joke or to annoy them?	sn't true in	
		going to talk to someone about something the that has made them angry, in order to solve		-
		inks someone is trying to make people believ ing is not very important or is not likely to h		
		satisfied that someone has admitted they having wrong?	ve done	
	6 Who th	inks someone has broken a promise to do so	mething?	
	wouldr 2 Oh, 3 It's very 4 She's ar inadequ 5 Georgii	was something from mon.  up, will you! Don't difficult to him down. It excellent employer. She never uate they seem.  up to me in that way before, and she revealed to me that she'd been in prison	on at me all the time!  He never likes to make firm plans.  down to her staff, however  e late last night. She's never  d in her	
54.3	verb equivalent of the solution of the go on its part of the solution of the s	e sentences containing rather formal verbs and alents in the brackets. Use a dictionary if necesse I won't reveal (		1
		e with so much tension in the air.	down to people.	

# Stages through life

Cathy has just had a new baby and is e-mailing her friend, Dolores. Follow the correspondence between the two friends.

Hi Dolores,

You'll be pleased to hear the new baby's doing fine. We've decided to name him after his grandfather, Patrick. He has blue eyes and quite fair hair, so he takes after2 his father, I find it hard to imagine myself bringing up3 a child. Wish me luck for the next 18 years! Love, Cathy

give him the same name as someone else

<sup>2</sup> has a similar appearance or character as an older member of his family

3 looking after a child and educating them until they are an adult

change from being a child to being an adult

5 continue

6 finally did something, especially without having planned to

Hi Cathy,

Glad to hear everything's OK with the new baby. Babies grow up4 so quickly and 18 years will seem like 18 weeks, I'm sure! Are you going to carry on working or will you stay at home now? When I had my first child I went back to work, so I really ended up6 doing two fulltime jobs!

Take care,

Dolores

Thanks for the encouraging words! I don't know what will become of my career. At the moment all I care about is that little Patrick will be a nice kid, that he won't drop out8 of school or college, that he won't turn to9 crime or drugs and wind up10 in prison, and that he'll be healthy and happy, just like your kids. Talk to you soon,

Cathy

<sup>7</sup> happen to

<sup>8</sup> stop going to classes before completing a

9 start to do or take something bad, usually because you are unhappy

10 finally do something, especially without having planned to (like the verb end up)

I'm sure the little lad will live up to 11 all your hopes and expectations! A lot of 13-year-olds could pass for 12 17 or 18 these days, and the kind of values that were handed down<sup>13</sup> to us by our parents and grandparents are considered old-fashioned now. But I'm still optimistic. Do let me know how things go. Regards to Peter.

Love, Dolores

be as good as he is expected to be

12 appear to be

13 given or taught, by an older person to a younger person

		EXCITCISCS
ndence	55.1	Which phrasal verbs in the e-mails on the opposite page could be replaced by the following synonyms? Write the phrasal verbs next to their synonym.
me ne else		1 continue 2 looks like 3 not complete 4 transmitted
older family child them		5 be as good as 6 happen to 7 raising 8 look as if they are
.n	55.2	Answer these questions in full sentences, using phrasal verbs.
ething, out		<ul> <li>1 Were you named after anyone? If so, who were you named after?</li> <li>2 Who, if anyone, do you take after in appearance?</li> <li>3 Who, if anyone, do you take after in character?</li> <li>4 Do you think that boys and girls grow up at the same speed?</li> <li>5 What reason might someone have for dropping out of university?</li> <li>6 What reason might someone have for turning to crime?</li> <li>7 Describe someone you know who could pass for a different age than they really are.</li> <li>8 Do you possess anything that has been handed down from your great-grandparents?</li> <li>9 Do you think that mothers and fathers have an equally important role to play in bringin up their children?</li> <li>10 Until what age would you like to carry on working?</li> </ul>
	55.3	Complete this short biography, using verbs from the opposite page.
dasses ing a		RICHARD POTTS WAS BORN 100 years ago today in the same small town in Wales that he lives in now. He was (1) after his maternal grandfather, Richard Jones, the distinguished sculptor, whom he was later said to (2) after in both character and appearance. The young
,		Richard was orphaned at an early age and was (3) up by an
e you		aunt. He failed to (4)
ething, out I to nd up)		(5) out of school at the age of 15. They were very concerned about what would (6) of him and, although there must have been plenty of temptations encouraging the young boy to (7) to gambling and drink, he resisted them all and (8) up taking a job in a coal mine. He impressed the
he is		managers so much that he eventually (9) up as a member of the board. He (10) on working until five years ago, when ill health forced him to retire, but he is still a familiar figure around the

ıt, erson person

Read an obituary or article about the death of someone famous from any English language newspaper and note down any phrasal verbs that you find in it.

## Health

#### Symptoms

These speakers all have health problems that can be described using phrasal verbs or in the case of blocked-up, an adjective based on a phrasal verb.



- (informal) vomiting
- <sup>2</sup> becoming ill, usually with a disease that is not very serious, e.g. flu, a cold
- 3 (informal) see note 2
- 4 trying hard to get rid of
- <sup>5</sup> dislocated or injured by making a bone move from its usual place
- 6 get rid of
- become larger or rounder than usual
- 8 (adjective) filled so that you are unable to breathe normally
- 9 become unconscious; fainted

### B

#### One medical story

Maggie has had a hard time recently. Firstly, her sister broke down! after her divorce and was sick for several months. Maggie was still caring for2 her when her brother was hit on the head by a tile that fell from a roof. He was unconscious for a couple of days. Fortunately, he pulled through<sup>3</sup> and has now more or less fully recovered although he does seem to have slowed down4 a lot. No sooner were they both better than their grandfather passed away5 and then just a few weeks later their grandmother passed on6 too.

- became mentally or physically ill because of an unpleasant experience
- 2 looking after someone who is too ill, too young, or old to look after themselves
- 3 recovered from a serious illness
- 4 become less physically active than before
- 5 died
- 6 died



Try to learn phrasal verbs in chunks or longer phrases, e.g. I'm coming down with flu; She's fighting off a cold; My nose is blocked-up.

56.1 Complete this text, using particles from	A
-----------------------------------------------	---

I feel as if I'm coming (1) with flu. I'm fighting (2) a sore throat and my nose is constantly blocked-...... (3). My glands have swollen (5). I wish I could shake it (6) as I have so much work to do. I can't afford to be absent.

#### Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences, using a phrasal verb from the opposite page.

- 1 I've had a sore throat for a week now I just can't get rid of it.
- 2 Meg hadn't eaten anything for 48 hours and so it wasn't surprising that she fainted in the middle of her gym lesson.
- 3 The doctors were afraid that the old man wouldn't survive the attack of pneumonia, but amazingly he recovered and was soon on his feet again.
- 4 I think I'm just about to get a cold I feel a bit shivery.
- 5 My thumb became bigger after I accidentally hit it with a hammer.
- 6 The sea was so rough that many people were vomiting over the side of the ship.
- 7 People usually write letters of condolence to the relatives of someone who has died.
- 8 The old lady is in great pain because she has dislocated her hip.
- 9 After the operation, her sister nursed her until she was completely recovered.
- 10 How do you think you contracted chicken pox?

#### 56.3 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

- 1 Jim's uncle passed for her elderly mother.
- 2 Sonya is fighting down a bit as they get older.
- 3 Rita is kept very busy caring down with flu.
- 4 Mary's ankles swelled off a bout of flu. up during the long flight.
- 5 Most people usually slow 6 I think Joe is going away last year.

#### 56.4 Complete these sentences in any way that makes sense.

- 1 When her great-aunt passed away Mary felt very ....... 2 Jack broke down when
- 3 The last time I threw up was 4 You can get a blocked-up nose if
- 5 Kate's finger swelled up after 6 The best way to fight off a cold is to
  - Look at a health advice page of an English language newspaper or magazine. Write down any phrasal verbs that you find there. Write them down in sentences to help you remember them.

d was

ly, he

the

### Sports items from newspapers

#### WEATHER DELAYS CUP FINAL

the kick-off of the Cup Final between Arsenal and Liverpool was delayed yesterday due to bad weather.

(noun) start of a game of football

# ARCHERY: England defeated

ENGLAND were knocked out2 of the European Archery Championship this afternoon in a surprise win by Sweden.

<sup>2</sup> forced to leave the competition because they were defeated

#### JOHNSON TO ATTEMPT RECORD

Welsh swimmer Peri Johnson says he is going for3 the world record in tomorrow's 100 metres freestyle event.

will try to achieve something difficult [e.g. break a record, win a medal]

#### DORNTON TO PLAY HARSFIELD

With both teams on 28 points, Dornton will meet Harsfield in a play-off this Saturday at Dornton's home ground to decide who goes up to the first division.

(noun) game to decide the winner, especially when the teams or competitors have the same number of points

### People talking about their sporting activities

I work out at the gym three times a week to try to burn off2 the calories and stay slim. I find it also helps me to work off3 the stress of work.

exercise in order to improve the strength or appearance of your body

<sup>2</sup> use or get rid of energy, calories or fat by doing a lot of physical exercise

3 get rid of an unpleasant feeling, e.g. aggression or anger, by doing something energetic

Before I start a match I always do a warm-up4. Then after the match I make sure I cool down5 and stretch properly.

4 (noun) gentle exercises which prepare you for more serious exercise (from the verb warm up)

5 become cooler

World-class marathon running can be very hard. You need great mental stamina, and you must never give in6. It's a great feeling when you pull ahead7 of the rest of the field and know you're winning.

6 accept that you have been defeated and agree to stop competing or fighting

<sup>7</sup> suddenly get in front of another person who was previously running at the same speed as you.

Table tennis is a great sport. Anyone can join in8. We have a knockout9 competition at work every month, just for fun.

<sup>8</sup> become involved in an activity with other people

9 (noun) a competition in which only the winners of each stage play in the next stage, until one person or team is the final winner

- 57.1 Match the phrasal verb on the left with its more formal equivalent on the right.
  - 1 join in attempt to achieve

defeat

2 give in

D

is

Drs

>)

IU

16

- 3 go for surrender
- 4 pull ahead participate 5 knock out overtake
- 57.2 Choose phrasal verb expressions from the opposite page to complete each of these notices from a sports club noticeboard.
  - 1 Always do a \_\_\_\_\_ before doing any strenuous exercise.
  - 2 Sign below if you would like to take part in next month's \_\_\_\_\_\_ squash tournament.
  - 3 Eat healthily. Remember you have to exercise for at least two hours to the calories from one cream cake!

  - 4 Regular exercise helps to \_\_\_\_\_\_ stress.
    5 Don't forget to \_\_\_\_\_\_ before running round the track.
  - 6 Remember it's just as important to \_\_\_\_\_\_ properly as it is to warm up.
- 57.3 Answer these questions, using full sentences.
  - 1 How often do you work out each month and what do you do when you work out?
  - 2 How might you warm up before running a marathon?
  - 3 Why would you be pleased if you pulled ahead of the other runners in a race?
  - 4 Which sport is better for burning off calories and why tennis or table tennis?
  - 5 Would you prefer to join in a snooker game or a football game after work?
  - 6 What kind of medal would a top athlete go for?
- Describe what is happening in these pictures, using one of the nouns or verbs from the opposite page.







Here are three more phrasal verbs with sporting connections that were not on the opposite page. Can you choose the correct definition from the box for each of them?

was defeated by progressed told to leave

- 1 If a footballer gets a red card, he is sent off the pitch.
- 2 England went out to Germany in the semi-finals.
- 3 Our team won the game and so they went forward to the next round.

#### Homes

phrasal verb	meaning	example
move out	stop living in a particular house or flat	Jack moved out of his college room last Monday,
move in	begin living in a new house or flat	A new family has moved in to the flat next door
move in together	start living in the same house as someone	Sam and I have always been good friends so when we both got jobs in Rio, we decided to move in together.
live on sth	have an amount of money in order to buy the things you need	I earn just enough to live on.
live off sth	have enough money for the things you need by taking it from a supply of money or another person	While Sue was unemployed she had to live off her savings.
put up sb or put sb up	let someone stay in your home for a short time	Would you be able to put me up when I'm in London next week?
sleep over	sleep in someone else's home for a night	My daughter loves it when a school friend sleeps over.
	(noun) a sleepover	The kids had a sleepover.

Note: Do not confuse to sleep over with to oversleep. The verb to oversleep means to sleep longer than you should have done, e.g.

If I oversleep and am late for work again, I'll lose my job.

### Daily routines

I've got a new job at the airport and have moved into a flat with a couple of friends. During the week I have to get up! early as I have to be at the airport by 6.30 a.m. I try to be very quiet in the mornings so I don't wake up2 my flatmates. At the weekends I love sleeping in3. On Saturdays I sometimes lie in4 till 11. I can't have a lie-in5 if I'm playing football though, which I sometimes do on Saturday mornings. On weekday evenings I turn in6 quite early, about 10.30 p.m. usually, but I stay up7 at weekends, of course. If I get home on Saturday night before my flatmates, I wait up8 until they arrive and we have a drink and a chat before going to bed.



I love sleeping in at weekends.

- get out of bed
- make them become conscious
- sleeping later in the morning than usual
- 4 stay in bed later in the morning than usual
- 5 (noun) longer time in bed in the morning than usual
- go to bed
- go to bed later than usual
- stay awake because you are waiting for someone to arrive

iday,

вp

n

:one

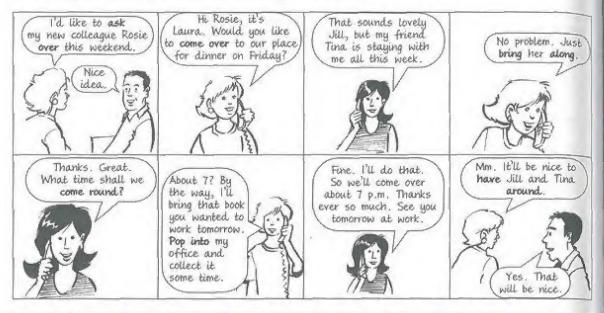
	58.1	Look at these notices a-f on a college noticeboar	d and answer the questions below.		
		<ul> <li>a) Final-year students moving out after graduation</li> <li>Tel. Steve and Nick on 276544.</li> </ul>	on have furniture to sell.		
		b) Living off your parents or off your savings? Earn extra cash by	y working at weekends. Call 896774.		
		c) Room available in house for female graduate st to move in immediately. Ring 655491, ask for Ju			
		d) Student grants are not enough to live on! Join our prote Bring your friends!	st outside the Senate Building, Friday 2 p.m.		
		e) Time to move on? If you've just graduated and want careers advice, come to the careers workshop at 3 p.m., Thursday 25 May, room 12A, Hughes Building.			
		f) Female postgrad, 24, looking for like-minded, non-smoking living together, call me on 733208! Nicola.	female to move in next month. If you think we could enjoy		
		Which notice would you respond to if			
		<ol> <li> your income was not sufficient to meet you</li> <li> you felt you needed to take on a new challe</li> <li> you were looking for bargain items because</li> <li> you were female and about to leave your act</li> <li> you were dependent on others for your income</li> <li> you were a female wanting to share a hous</li> </ol>	enge or start a new phase in your life? e you're going into an unfurnished flat? ccommodation and had nowhere to live? ome and wanted to earn your own?		
	58.2	Are you a sleep lover? Fill the gaps in the magazing questions by ticking the boxes.	ine questionnaire and then answer the		
		The sleep lover s	urvey		
1	What ti	ime do you normally wake?	☐ 6–7 a.m. ☐ 7–8 a.m. ☐ 8–9 a.m ☐ later		
2	Do you	r feel sleepy if you up after midnight?	□ yes □ no		
3	Do you	ı have ain at weekends?	□ always □ sometimes □ never		
4		you wait if a friend or relative you utting was arriving very late?	□ yes □ no		
5	Do you	enjoy in if you don't have to get up?	□ yes □ no		
5	What ti	ime do you usually turn?	☐ 9–10 p.m. ☐ 10 p.m.–12 a.m. ☐ later		
7	How of	ften do you sleep at a friend's house?	☐ often ☐ occasionally ☐ never		
8	How o	ften do you not hear your alarm and?	□ every day □ sometimes □ never		
	58.3	Complete these sentences using phrasal verbs fro  1 I'll be late back tonight so please don't bother  2 Kate can't afford a hotel so she's asked a frien  3 I need an alarm clock to stop me from  4 The removal firm helped us to  5 I'm really tired. I think I'm going to	d to		

# Socialising



#### Arranging social gatherings

Read the picture story below and note the phrasal verbs.



phrasal verb	meaning	alternative phrasal verb
ask sb over/round	invite someone to come to your house	invite sb around/ round/over
come over	visit someone at their house	come around/round
bring along sb/sth or bring sb/sth along	bring someone or something somewhere	
pop in/into	go into a place just for a short time (informal)	
have sb around/round	if you have someone around, they come to your house for a social visit	have sb over

### B Other socialising verbs

I met Peter the other day. He was asking after you. [ask for information about someone, especially about their health]

I'll call round and see Uncle Jim after work today. [visit someone who lives near to you for a short time]

Please drop in/round any time – I'm usually at home. [informal: make a short visit to someone in their home, usually without arranging it before]

The boss has invited me out. I wonder what she wants? [ask someone to go with you to a place, e.g. a restaurant or the cinema]

- A: I'll bring that CD round for you to listen to tomorrow.
- B: Great! Could you also bring round that book I lent you? [bring someone or something somewhere, especially to someone's house]

Just ing.

(5 m)

rerb.

nd

or a

2

5

59.1 Choose one of the phrasal verbs from A to report what Tim says in the sentences below. Tim: Would you like to come to the cinema? He invited me out 1 Tim: Jane can come with you if you like. He said I could \_\_\_\_\_\_ jane \_\_\_\_\_ if I liked. 2 Tim: You can both come to my place after the film. He \_\_\_\_\_ us \_\_\_\_ after the film. 3 Tim: I'll quickly go to the shop and get some biscuits on the way home. He said he would ..... the shop for some biscuits on the way home. 4 Tim: I love it when people come to visit me. He said he loved \_\_\_\_\_people \_\_\_ 5 Tim: You can borrow that CD I was telling you about if my friend returns it. He said I could borrow the CD if his friend \_\_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ before my party. 59.2 Correct the errors with the particles in these sentences. 1 My parents are always asking over you so I'll tell them your news next time I see them. 2 Do drop out some time when you're passing our house and have a cup of tea. 3 My uncle has invited me and a friend in to a smart restaurant to celebrate my birthday. 4 Of course you can bring your brother with when you come to our place tomorrow. 5 I often call about and see my grandmother on my way home from work. 6 I hope I'm not in trouble. The boss has just asked me to pop about to his office. 59.3 Explain the difference in meaning between these pairs of sentences. 1 a) I've got to pop up and see Bill in his office. b) I've got to pop down and see Bill in his office. 2 a) It's time I invited Andy and Becky over for a meal. b) It's time I invited Andy and Becky out for a meal. 3 a) Shall we call round and see Peggy this afternoon? b) Shall we drop round and see Peggy this afternoon? 4 a) I'll bring my niece round at the weekend. b) I'll bring my niece along at the weekend. 59.4 Write down four different ways in which you could invite someone to visit you at your place. Use a different phrasal verb each time. 59.5 Here are some more phrasal verbs connected with the theme of socialising. What do you think the phrasal verbs in bold mean? Use a dictionary if necessary. Did you enjoy your date with Paul? Don't talk to me about Paul! He stood me up! I waited there for at least half an hour and then I decided just to go to the cinema on my own. It was really annoying because my sister had wanted to tag along but I wouldn't let her and in the end I was all alone. I thought we were going to have this lovely romantic evening! If you run across him, you can tell him I'm very annoyed with him!

#### Preparing food and drink

Martha was having a dinner party for some friends. A few days earlier she had prepared a chicken casserole and put it in the freezer to make sure it did not go off1. On the morning of the dinner party she removed it from the freezer and thawed it out2. Then before her friends arrived she put the chicken on<sup>3</sup> and she made a salad. She heated up4 the casserole, making sure that it did not boil over5.



- become not good to eat because it is too old
- 2 let it gradually become warmer so that it was not frozen any more
- <sup>3</sup> began to cook food
- 4 made it hot
- 5 flow over the side of the pan

### Serving food and drink



When her friends arrived, Martha handed round olives and other snacks and her boyfriend poured out2 drinks. He went round the room topping up3 glasses whenever he noticed that anyone needed a top-up4. Then they sat at the table and had the chicken casserole. Everyone said how well it went with5 the salad and nothing was left over6 at the end of the meal.

- offered something, especially food and drink, to each person in a group
- 2 filled glasses or cups with a drink
- 3 putting more drink into someone's glass or cup
- 4 (noun) more drink poured into a glass or cup (from the verb top up)
- 5 combined or tasted good with
- 6 remained or was not eaten

### Styles of eating and drinking

As there were no leftovers! the next day, Martha decided to get a takeaway2. She ordered a curry to take away3. Martha's brother says that she lives on/off4 curry because she eats it so often. Martha denies that, of course, but she admits that if ever she and her boyfriend eat out5 they always go to a curry restaurant.



- (noun) food prepared for a previous meal but
- 2 (noun) a meal that you buy and take somewhere else to eat. Takeaway is also the place where you buy a meal like this, e.g. a Chinese takeaway.
- <sup>3</sup> buy prepared food in a shop or restaurant and take it somewhere else to eat
- only eats a particular type of food
- 5 eat a meal in a restaurant not at home

You will find quite a few more phrasal verbs on the food theme if you look at the instructions in a recipe book, e.g. cut up an onion, take off the skins of the tomatoes, etc. If possible look in an English language recipe book or search for some recipes on the Internet and make a note of any phrasal verbs that you find there.

or a

trant

rbs

60.1	Look at A	and B opposite. Then complete these sentences with an appropriate phrasal verb.
	1 Your gl	ass is half-empty. Let me it up for you.
		za's cold. I'llit up for you.
		cken's frozen. I'll put it in the microwave toit out.
		ill the guests are here, I'll out the champagne.
		's eating the nuts and crisps. Shall I them round?
60.2	Use phras	al verbs from the opposite page to complete the second person's responses.
	1 Annie: Philip:	This milk smells bad. Yes, I think
	2 Erica: Harry:	We need something to accompany the fish. Yes, we need something that will
	3 Paul: Jane:	It's time to start cooking the potatoes.  OK, I'll
	4 Tanya:	We'll have to keep the sauce on a very low heat.
	Ricki:	Yes, we'll have to make sure it
	5 Freda:	Let's go to a restaurant this evening.
	Dave:	Good idea. It's ages since we last
60.3		e following questions.
00.3		phrasal verbs on the opposite page also have noun forms. What are the verbs and
		te their noun forms?
	2 In the c	puestion, 'Susie, would you <u>pass</u> the biscuits <u>round</u> for me, please?' which phrasal the opposite page means the same as <u>pass round</u> ?
		two phrasal verbs mean that you regularly eat one type of food to the exclusion of
60.4	Complete	these sentences with words from exercise 60.3.
	1 We've s	got some nice from the party last night. Shall I hear them up?
		eople seem to junk food. It can't be good for them.
		ou these snacks to the guests? Thanks. [two answers]
		rould you like a
	6 The for	want to eat your food in the restaurant or?  od from the
	home.	to the management, was as good as anything we could have cooked at
	7 Nothin	g at the end of the meal.
60.5		f these sentences it is possible to separate the verb and the particle. Where possible,
	1 Would	you hand round the peanuts, please?
		my sister lives on fish and chips.
		orget to thaw out the gateau.
	4 I don't	think that chips go with caviar.

#### The weather forecast



It will brighten up in the north of England tomorrow morning, but the sun won't last long and the region will soon cloud over2 again. Rain in the east will clear up3 later. An area of high pressure means it should warm up4 over the next few days in most regions, except in the far north, where it will actually cool down5 a little because of strong north-easterly winds. On the south coast winds will pick up6 during the afternoon, becoming strong by the evening.

- the sky will become lighter and the sun will start to shine
- 2 the sky will become covered with clouds
- 3 it will stop being rainy or cloudy

- 4 become warmer
- 5 become cooler
- 6 become stronger

### Talking about the weather and its effects

Jim is talking about his camping trip to the Scottish mountains.

The weather was dreadful; we were there for a week and the storms just never let up1. We were flooded out2 twice in our tent and ended up staying in a hostel. It just poured down<sup>3</sup> every day – one heavy downpour<sup>4</sup> after another. We were rained off<sup>5</sup> most days and couldn't do any serious walking. Then one day we thought the storms had blown over6, so we climbed one of the highest peaks in the area. It started to snow. Luckily there was a cabin at the summit, so we took shelter there. We were snowed in for two days before we could get out and go back down again. I shall never forget it as long as I live!

- stopped or improved
- <sup>2</sup> had to leave a home or place because of a flood
- 3 rained heavily
- 4 (noun) a very heavy period of rain (from the verb pour down)
- 5 if an outside activity is rained off, it cannot start or continue because it is raining
- 6 become less strong and then ended
- 7 were unable to leave that place because there was so



Help yourself to learn phrasal verbs by drawing word diagrams based on one verb, e.g. pick, blow, or on one topic, e.g. weather.

g 1 in

xt :h, : of

on

		v but unfortunately the forecast says that it's going	
	later in t		
		wish it would	
	_	be fun now the wind	
		nornings but by midday it has usually	
		ofternoon if the weather	
61.2			
01.2		the left with the most logical consequence on the right.	
	1 We were snowed in.	Some trees got blown down.	
	2 We were flooded out.	The teams were very disappointed.	
	3 The rain didn't let up.	All our carpets were ruined.	
	4 It cleared up later on.	We couldn't even open the front door.	
	5 A strong wind picked up.	We ate our picnic in the car.	
	6 The match was rained off.	We went for a walk in the evening.	
61.3	Complete these sentences with a	noun or phrasal verb from the opposite page.	
	1 It rained heavily all day. I've	never seen such a	
	2 It's been pouring down all da	y. I wish it would	
	3 If the river breaks its banks t	he villagers will be	
	4 No-one left their homes until	the hurricane	
		ber of football matches	
		photos now. Why don't you wait until it?	
		- even at night it doesn't	
	8 It's been terribly cold but the	y have promised that it willnext week.	
61.4		ne opposite page can be used in a metaphorical way. Try to nings and answer these questions.	
	1 If Ioan is brightening up a bi	t, is her mood getting more or less cheerful?	
		cone should cool down if they are angry or if they are sad?	
	3 If an argument or scandal blows over, does it start or finish?		
	4 If an illness clears up, does it get better or worse?		
	5 If a party warms up, does it		
	6 If someone's face clouds over	, do they start to look worried or happy?	
	Write a paragraph about the	weather you have experienced recently. Use as many as possible of the	
	Write a paragraph about the words presented on the oppo	site page.	

#### Going on a journey

Matthew had had a busy time at work so he was glad to get away1 from London for a month's holiday. He set off/out2 last Saturday. His journey really started off3 at Waterloo Station when he got on4 the Eurostar train to Paris. He was heading for a villa in the south of France but was planning to stop off<sup>5</sup> in Paris for a couple of days before continuing south.

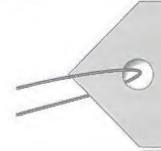


- go somewhere for a holiday, especially when you need a rest
- <sup>2</sup> started his journey
- 3 began
- 4 boarded
- 5 visit for a short time when on the way somewhere else

#### Travel in general

phrasal verb	meaning	example
check in	arrive at a hotel, say who you are and be given a key for your room	You go to reception and check in while I park the car.
check out	leave a hotel after paying and giving back the key of your room	I went to the hotel hoping to meet Sam but he had already <b>checked out</b> .
get in	(of a train, bus, plane, etc.) arrive at a particular time	My train got in at 6.30 p.m.
pull in	(of a train) arrive in a station	The train pulled in exactly on time.
pull out	(of a train) leave a station	Unfortunately, the train I'd hoped to catch was pulling out just as I arrived on the platform.

#### Air travel



ouise was lucky enough to get a standby to New Zealand last week. There weren't many people on the flight so she checked in2 quickly. The flight took off3 on time and touched down4 half an hour early. On her way home she is hoping to be able to stop over5 in Hong Kong for a day or two.



- (noun) cheap ticket for a flight which you buy just before the flight if seats are available
- <sup>2</sup> showed her ticket at the official desk (the check-in) so she could be given a boarding card
- 3 began to fly
- 4 landed on the ground
- 5 stop somewhere for a period of rime when you are on a long journey

- 62.1 Write sentences that mean the opposite of the sentences below, using verbs from A.
  - 1 Jack arrived home last Sunday.
  - 2 Jill got off the plane in Dubai.
  - 3 My journey ended in a very exciting way.
- 62.2 Fill the gaps in this Internet chat session between Charlie and her friend Lin.

KMG INSTANT CHAT	
Want to hear?  Hi Charlie – how's it going? Yeah. Tell mel  Well, I (1)	No, but don't worry about coming to meet me. I can (7) in at the airport hotel and sleep during the morning, and see you later. Anyway, I'm going to (8) over for two days in Taipei, then go to Tokyo to see Noriko. I'll just (9) off there for one night and then it's on to Sydney to see Annabel.  Wow! You'll be exhausted!!!!!!!!!!  Yes, but it'll be worth it! I really do need to (10) away; I've been studying so hard!  Hey, must go. Talk to you after my lecture.

62.3 The phrasal verbs below have noun or adjective forms. Complete the table and write an example sentence for each noun or adjective form. Use a dictionary if necessary.

phrasal verb	noun/adjective form	example
touch down		
check in		
get away		
take off		
stop over		

Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in this text. There are six mistakes in total.

I went off for Waterloo Station at 11 a.m. and there I got up the midday Eurostar train to Paris. It pulled off exactly on time and soon we were in the Channel Tunnel. After a couple of hours we pulled over at Paris Gare du Nord station. Next day I checked off from my hotel and flew back. We touched in at Heathrow Airport at 11 a.m.

was rm.

### A Stopping to do things



phrasal verb	meaning
draw up	If a vehicle, or someone in a vehicle, draws up, they arrive somewhere and stop.
drop off sb/sth or drop sb/sth off	take someone to a place that they want to go to, or deliver something to a place, usually in a car, often when you are going somewhere else
pull up	If a car pulls up, it stops, often for a short time.
pull over	drive a car to the side of the road in order to stop
pick up sth/sb or pick sth/sb up	to collect someone who is waiting for you, or to collect something you have left somewhere or that you have bought
pull in or pull into somewhere	If a car pulls in or pulls into a place, it moves to the side of the road or to another place where it can stop.

### **B** Driving problems

Police said the van had **pulled out**<sup>1</sup> to overtake a lorry when the van driver lost control and crashed into the central barrier of the motorway.

driven out of the traffic lane it was in and entered a faster lane or the other side of the road

Two children were **knocked down<sup>2</sup>** by a drunken driver. Both children were seriously injured and police have arrested the driver.

<sup>2</sup> hit by a vehicle and injured or killed

An elderly man was run over<sup>3</sup> at the corner of Pierce Street and Welbourne Avenue. He was taken to Hughes Hospital suffering from head injuries.

3 hit by a vehicle and driven over, injuring or killing him

A pile-up<sup>4</sup> involving twenty vehicles caused a 10-mile tailback<sup>5</sup> on the M12 motorway today. Police blamed fog and black ice.

4 (noun) crash involving several vehicles

5 (noun) long line of traffic that is moving very slowly

er of was iries.

ng him

slowly

-78		in the next lay-by, we can hav	
			on my way there and then I can
		on my way home afterwards.	eventually
			outside our gate.
			page into one of these categories.
	ords relating to moving and topping the car	words relating to accidents and traffic problems	words relating to transporting other people
Co	emplete this letter with an	appropriate particle from the b	ox. Use each word once only.
b	back in off out	over up	
	Dear Diana,		
		day we had with you. It was :	so kind of you to let us bring
		ortunately, the only problem was	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	(1) on the moto	
	was a tail	17 Low at loast six mil	
	(3)	at a service station and waite	d there until it cleared. In the
	(3) car park there Gina nearl	at a service station and waite y got knocked	d there until it cleared. In the (4) as a car pulled
	car park there Gina nearl (5)	at a service station and waite y got knocked ) far too quickly from behind a	d there until it cleared. In the (4) as a car pulled parked lorry. We were very
	(3) car park there Gina nearl(5) relieved when we finally	at a service station and waite y got knocked ) far too quickly from behind a dropped Gina	d there until it cleared. In the (4) as a car pulled parked lorry. We were very
		at a service station and waite y got knocked ) far too quickly from behind a dropped Gina	d there until it cleared. In the (4) as a car pulled parked lorry. We were very
		at a service station and waite y got knocked ) far too quickly from behind a dropped Gina	d there until it cleared. In the (4) as a car pulled parked lorry. We were very
		at a service station and waite y got knocked ) far too quickly from behind a dropped Gina	d there until it cleared. In the (4) as a car pulled. parked lorry. We were very (6) at her parents' and
He		at a service station and waite y got knocked ) far too quickly from behind a dropped Gina	d there until it cleared. In the (4) as a car pulled. parked lorry. We were very (6) at her parents' and
He		at a service station and waite y got knocked ) far too quickly from behind a dropped Gina	there until it cleared. In the
He bo	car park there Gina nearl(5) relieved when we finally made our own way home. Much love, Fiona ere are some more phrasal ld 1–6 with the definition To get to the farm take the	at a service station and waite y got knocked far too quickly from behind a dropped Gina  I verbs and nouns connected with s a-f.	there until it cleared. In the (4) as a car pulled parked lorry. We were very (6) at her parents' and the driving. Match the words in ter the crossroads.
He bo 1 2 3	car park there Gina nearlesses (5) relieved when we finally of made our own way home. Much love, Fiona re are some more phrasal ld 1–6 with the definition To get to the farm take the car left the main road. The car was written off in	at a service station and waite y got knocked far too quickly from behind a dropped Gina  I verbs and nouns connected win s a-f. he second turn-off on the left afi d and turned off down a narrov n the accident.	there until it cleared. In the (4) as a car pulled parked lorry. We were very (6) at her parents' and the driving. Match the words in ter the crossroads.
He bo 1 2 3 4	car park there Gina nearl	at a service station and waite y got knocked far too quickly from behind a dropped Gina  verbs and nouns connected wit as a-f. ne second turn-off on the left aft d and turned off down a narrow n the accident. negreed that the car was a write-of	there until it cleared. In the
He 200 1 2 2 3 4 4 5	car park there Gina nearly (5) relieved when we finally of made our own way home. Much love, Fiona  To get to the farm take the Car left the main road The car was written off in The insurance company a You get out of the car here	at a service station and waite y got knocked far too quickly from behind a dropped Gina  verbs and nouns connected wit s a-f. ne second turn-off on the left aft d and turned off down a narrov n the accident. agreed that the car was a write-ore and I'll find a parking spot as	there until it cleared. In the (4) as a car pulled parked lorry. We were very (6) at her parents' and the driving. Match the words in the crossroads. The track.
He oo	car park there Gina nearly (5) relieved when we finally of made our own way home. Much love, Fiona  To get to the farm take the The car left the main road. The car was written off in The insurance company a You get out of the car her Ian broke his arm when here.	at a service station and waite y got knocked far too quickly from behind a dropped Gina  verbs and nouns connected wit as a-f. ne second turn-off on the left aft d and turned off down a narrow n the accident. negreed that the car was a write-of	there until it cleared. In the (4) as a car pulled parked lorry. We were very (6) at her parents' and the driving. Match the words in the crossroads. The track.
Hebool 1 2 3 4 5 6 6 a)	car park there Gina nearly (5) relieved when we finally of made our own way home. Much love, Fiona  ere are some more phrasalld 1–6 with the definition To get to the farm take the The car left the main road. The car was written off in The insurance company a You get out of the car her lan broke his arm when heleave a vehicle	at a service station and waite y got knocked far too quickly from behind a dropped Gina  verbs and nouns connected wit s a-f. ne second turn-off on the left aft d and turned off down a narrow n the accident. ngreed that the car was a write-or re and I'll find a parking spot an ne fell off his bike after running	there until it cleared. In the (4) as a car pulled parked lorry. We were very (6) at her parents' and the driving. Match the words in the crossroads. The track.
He bo 1 2 3 4 5 6 a) b)	car park there Gina nearly (5) relieved when we finally of made our own way home. Much love, Fiona  The are some more phrasal of 1–6 with the definition To get to the farm take the the car left the main road. The car was written off in the insurance company a You get out of the car her lan broke his arm when heleave a vehicle damage a vehicle so badly	at a service station and waite y got knocked far too quickly from behind a dropped Gina  I verbs and nouns connected wit as a-f. The second turn-off on the left aft d and turned off down a narrov n the accident, agreed that the car was a write-or re and I'll find a parking spot an the fell off his bike after running y that it cannot be repaired	there until it cleared. In the (4) as a car pulled parked lorry. We were very (6) at her parents' and the driving. Match the words in the crossroads. The track.
He bo 1 2 3 4 5 6 a) b) c)	car park there Gina nearly (5) relieved when we finally of made our own way home. Much love, Fiona  ere are some more phrasal ld 1-6 with the definition To get to the farm take the The car left the main road. The car was written off in the insurance company a You get out of the car here Ian broke his arm when he leave a vehicle damage a vehicle so badly accidentally hit somethins.	at a service station and waite y got knocked far too quickly from behind a dropped Gina  I verbs and nouns connected wit as a-f. The second turn-off on the left aft d and turned off down a narrov n the accident, agreed that the car was a write-or re and I'll find a parking spot an the fell off his bike after running y that it cannot be repaired	there until it cleared. In the (4) as a car pulled parked lorry. We were very (6) at her parents' and the driving. Match the words in the crossroads. The track.
Hebool 1 2 3 4 4 5 6 (a) (b) (c) (d) (e)	car park there Gina nearly (5) relieved when we finally of made our own way home. Much love, Fiona  The are some more phrasal ld 1-6 with the definition To get to the farm take the The car left the main road. The car was written off in The insurance company a You get out of the car her Ian broke his arm when he leave a vehicle so badly accidentally hit something leave the road you are on road that goes off anothe	at a service station and waite y got knocked far too quickly from behind a dropped Gina  I verbs and nouns connected wit as a-f. The second turn-off on the left aft d and turned off down a narrow the accident. The accident are and I'll find a parking spot at the fell off his bike after running by that it cannot be repaired g while driving a vehicle to travel along another one	there until it cleared. In the (4) as a car pulled parked lorry. We were very (6) at her parents' and the driving. Match the words in the crossroads. The track.

# **Technology**

#### Electricity

phrasal verb	meaning	example
switch/turn on sth or switch/turn sth on	touch a switch to make a machine or electrical device start working	When I tried to switch/turn on my computer in the morning, nothing happened,
switch/turn off sth or switch/turn sth off	touch a switch to make an electrical device stop working	Would the last person to leave the room please switch/turn off the lights.
plug in sth or plug sth in or plug sth into sth	connect to an electricity supply	The computer isn't working because you haven't plugged it in! You can plug it into the wall there.
turn up sth or turn sth up	make louder or stronger	Can you turn up the TV – I can hardly hear what the actors are saying.
charge up sth or charge sth up	put electricity into a piece of equipment	My mobile phone isn't working - I need to charge it up.
go off	make a loud noise, e.g. an alarm clock or a burglar alarm	The car alarm went off in the middle of the night, waking all the neighbours.
cut out	suddenly stop working, e.g. a machine or engine	The pilot's radio cut out as the plane was flying over the Himalayas.

## Doing technical things

All the following verbs may have their object either before or after the particle, e.g. pump tyres up or pump up tyres.

Joe's pumping up his tyres.

Len is at the photocopier running off twenty copies of the agenda for the meeting.

Emma is loading up the washing machine.

Marco videoed a film last night and is now playing it back.

Paula is measuring out 100 grams of sugar.



om

Ig

of

- **64.1** Look at these instructions for using a personal digital organiser. Complete the instructions, using phrasal verbs from A.
  - I Remove computer from packaging. Do not ..... the computer on at this point. (2) 2 Insert the power cable as shown and CO E the unit into an electrical supply. 題 3 If the screen illuminates, ..... off the computer using the 'on/off' button. 4 Allow the battery to up for at least 12 hours. 5 The screen brightness can be controlled using the screen button. up the brightness
- 64.2 Rewrite the underlined words, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.
  - 1 I'll put all the things to be washed up in the dishwasher for you.
  - 2 Press the 'play' button so we can listen to that tape you recorded at the concert.
  - 3 The mechanic put some air into the tyres while he was servicing the car.
  - 4 The security alarm began to ring accidentally when we opened the door to the office.
  - 5 I was driving up a steep hill when the engine suddenly stopped working.
  - 6 Could you produce thirty copies of this report for the meeting, please?
  - 7 We've just bought a breadmaking machine. All you do is weigh and pour the exact amounts of all the ingredients, put them in the machine and switch it on.
  - 8 Don't switch on the vacuum cleaner until it is connected to the electricity supply.
- 64.3 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.
  - 1 I couldn't hear what they were saying on the radio so I turned it down.
  - 2 What must we do when goes the alarm bell off?

by pressing the button till the desired

level is reached.

- 3 My mobile is low. Can I charge up it here?
- 4 Could you help me, please, by filling up the washing machine?
- 5 It's very dark in here do switch off the light.
- 6 Mel asked him to measure off 250 grams of butter.



Look at the instructions for any electrical device you have, e.g. a mobile phone, a DVD player. If there is an instruction section in English, compare it with the section in your own language and make sure you understand any phrasal verbs you find.

# Computers

#### Working with files or documents

Ron: It would be a disaster if I lost all this work I've done. Martin: Well, you should back your work up every day [make

a copy of computer information so that you do

not lose it]. I keep a back-up of important files on floppies

or a CD-ROM [noun: extra copy for safety].

Professor Dell: I have to put all these statistics into my research paper. numumum m

I hate typing figures; I'm so slow.

Rana: Well, why don't you save time and pay one

of your students to type/key them in?

[put information into a computer using a keyboard]

I find it difficult to read my work on screen. Kirsty:

It doesn't seem real somehow.

Trevor: Well, why don't you print it out? [produce a printed

copy of a document that has been written on a computer]

Kirsty: Yes, I always find it easier to read a printout myself.

[noun: printed copy of an electronic document]

Luke I can't see the detail on this picture file, it's too small. Anne:

No problem. You can just zoom in by clicking on

this icon here [show a clear and detailed picture of something]. And then you can just zoom out [show something

in less detail] by clicking on this little icon here,



Note that with the verbs back up, type in, key in and print out, the object can go either before or after the particle, e.g. back a file up or back up a file.

#### Using a network and the Internet

phrasal verb	meaning	example
log in/on	put your name into a computer so that you can start using it	You can log on/in using my password if you want to use the computer.
log off/out	finish using a computer system	Don't forget to log off/out when you've finished.
hack into sth	get into someone else's computer system without permission in order to look at information or do something illegal	Someone hacked into the computers at work and destroyed important data.
pick up sth or pick sth up	connect to the Internet and access e-mails	I'll take my laptop so I should be able to pick up my e-mails while I'm away.
scroll across/ down/up (sth)	move across/down/up a web page or other document on a computer screen	Scroll up to the top of the page.



Many websites are in English. Next time you visit a website, note down any phrasal verbs that are used on the web pages, e.g. check out our new products.

rs a.

ed

65.1 Imagine that you are writing a report on a computer in your office or college. Write the things from the box below in the order in which you would do them. back up your work log off key in your report print out your work log on 65.2 Complete each of these sentences, using a phrasal verb expression from the opposite page. 1 If you find it hard to see the detail in the picture, \_\_\_\_\_\_ so you can see more. Then click on the same icon again to \_\_\_\_\_ and the picture will go back to normal size. 2 Although I'll be working away from the office for a couple of weeks, I'll still be my e-mails every day. 3 If you \_\_\_\_\_ to the bottom of the page, you'll find the data you want. 4 I \_\_\_\_\_\_ to this brilliant new website last night. Let me give you the address so that you can check it out. 5 On these disks you'll find a \_\_\_\_\_ of all the data connected with the project. 6 Do you think you could let me have a \_\_\_\_\_\_ of that screen? I don't have the time to write down all the details. 65.3 Choose the correct word to complete these sentences. a) off b) on c) into d) out 2 For security reasons, always log ...... when you leave your computer unattended for any period of time. a) on b) in c) out d) up 3 My secretary is very quick at keying \_\_\_\_\_ data. d) in a) onto b) on c) into d) in b) down c) up 5 The ability to zoom \_\_\_\_\_ is particularly useful when you are working on detailed diagrams. a) out b) in c) up d) on 6 Larry went into a cybercafé in Bangkok to pick \_\_\_\_\_ his e-mails. b) on c) off a) out d) up 65.4 Explain when you would want to click on these icons.



Violence flared up again today in the troubled mountainous state of Phrasalia when several bombs went off2 in the centre of the capital, Verbosa. Support for the rebels is growing and it is expected that the rebels will succeed in bringing down3 a government that is increasingly unpopular. There are fears that a full-scale civil war may break out4.

- suddenly happened and became serious (used about something negative like violence, anger or an argument)
- 2 exploded

- causing people in power to lose their position
- suddenly start, usually used about something dangerous and unpleasant like war, fire or disease (noun = outbreak)

## Slimming breakthrough

out2 leaked vesterday that a major US pharmaceutical laboratory is about to launch a dramatic new slimming drug. The lab was in discussions last year with a British company about

the manufacture of the drug, but the British company pulled out3 after a disagreement about safety procedures. A French company also broke off4 talks with the lab last month.

- (noun) an important discovery or success that enables you to achieve or deal with something
- <sup>2</sup> became public so that people who should not have known about something learn of it
- 3 stopped being involved
- ended suddenly before they had been completed

A SURVEY published today reveals that the number of accidents caused by cars driving too fast has shot up! in the last couple of years. A government spokesperson said that they are determined to crack down2

on any driver caught exceeding the speed limit. Police have been promised financial support to enable them to step up3 all possible measures to make motorists reduce their speed.

- increased very quickly
- <sup>2</sup> treat people more strictly in order to try to stop them doing things they should not do (noun = crackdown)
- 3 do more of something, usually in order to improve a situation

#### JAIL BREAKOUT! ALARMS VILLAGERS

A DANGEROUS prisoner who escaped from Kenton Prison last night is causing alarm among local residents. It is thought that the escaped convict may have found a hideaway2 not far from the prison and police have encouraged the inhabitants of nearby villages to look out for3 anything suspicious.

- (noun) escape (from the verb break out)
- 2 (noun) secret place where someone goes to be alone
- 3 carefully watch people or things around you so that you will notice a particular person or thing

d

re

ition ning or

very 1 to :hing ple vn

/erb

ar

Look at these news headlines then ar	THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN		
TOP SECRET DEFENCE REPORT LEAKS OUT			
PHRASALIAN GOVERNMENT BROUGHT DOWN BY ARMS SCANDAL			
POLICE TO CRACK DOWN ON	N MOBILE PHONE TI	HIEVES	
Violence flares up in Hirada			
SWEDEN PULLS OUT OF TRADE	AGREEMENT		
TERRORIST HIDEAWAY RAIDED BY SPEC	CIAL FORCES		
1 There has been a huge fire in the	city of Hirada.	true false	
2 A terrorist hiding place has been a	attacked by troops.	true false	
3 A government has collapsed becau	use of a scandal.	true false	
4 A top secret report has been publi	ished.	true false	
S Sweden has gained huge benefits f	from a trade agreement.	true false	
6 The police will take a hard attitud	de to mobile phone thieve	es. true false	
		ioun forms. Complete the ta	
below. Use a dictionary if necessary.  phrasal verb		noun forms. Complete the ta	
below. Use a dictionary if necessary.		noun forms. Complete the ta	
below. Use a dictionary if necessary.	noun form	noun forms. Complete the ta	
below. Use a dictionary if necessary.  phrasal verb	noun form	noun forms. Complete the ta	
below. Use a dictionary if necessary.  phrasal verb  break out (from prison)	noun form	noun forms. Complete the ta	
below. Use a dictionary if necessary.  phrasal verb  break out (from prison)  break out (war, disease, etc.)	noun form	noun forms. Complete the ta	
below. Use a dictionary if necessary.  phrasal verb  break out (from prison)  break out (war, disease, etc.)	noun form crackdown	noun forms. Complete the ta	

#### Crime reports in newspapers

Here are some people telling others about things they have just read in the newspaper. Look at the phrasal verbs they use to explain what happened.

#### SECURITY GUARD ATTACKED

A security guard at an electronics factory was attacked and badly injured by thieves last night. They punched him and kicked him ...

#### £30K JEWEL ROBBERY

hieves entered a town-centre jewellery store by force last night and stole £30,000 worth of jewels and watches ...

## PRISONERS ESCAPE

Three prisoners escaped from the Holton Maximum Security Prison this morning. Police are searching a wide ....

#### SCHOOL COMPUTERS STOLEN

Two men persuaded a teacher at Stanbridge School yesterday that they were collecting six computers for repair and maintenance. They took them away, but it later became clear they were thieves.

Gosh! A security guard was beaten up at that electronics factory last night. Terrible!

Did you hear? Somebody broke into that jewellery shop in the town centre last night and stole £30,000 worth of stuff.

Hey! Three prisoners have broken out of Holton Jail. We'd better lock all our doors tonight!

Wow! Did you hear that? Two guys walked off with six computers from a school yesterday in broad daylight!

#### Other verbs connected with crime B

If you	then you
hold up sth/sb or hold sth/sb up	steal money from a building, person or vehicle, by using violence or by threatening to use it
tip off sb or tip sb off	warn someone secretly about something that will happen so that they can take action or prevent it from happening
put sb up to sth	encourage someone to do something stupid or wrong
take in sb or take sb in	deceive someone or make them believe something that is not true
lead on sb or lead sb on	make someone believe something that is not true, especially to make them do something they don't really want to do
let off sb or let sb off	do not punish someone who has committed a crime or done something wrong, or do not punish someone severely
lean on sb	try to make someone do something by threatening or persuading them (informal)
are or get mixed up in sth	are or become involved in an illegal or bad activity

·ok

vas nics le!

ast

ve il.

th

to

67.1	Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.				
	2 The th 3 The bu 4 The pr	l man was beaten ieves walked irglars broke isoner managed to break ieves held	into the house by a side window.  up a local bank yesterday.  off with some priceless antique silver.  up in his own home yesterday.  out in broad daylight.		
67.2	Describe what each speaker is doing, using one of the phrasal verbs from the opposite page				
	1 (586)	Give me all the money	3	It was Rocky who broke	
	(	in the safe or I'll shoot.		into the bank, Sergeant Jones.	
	2		4		
		s this is your first offence, hall not punish you this tim	ne.	If you don't give me that confidential report, I'll tell your boss about your criminal past.	
67.3	Complete these dialogues using phrasal verbs.				
	Mandy:	I suspect that young neigh something illegal.	bour of o	ars has got (1)in	
	Rose:	Yes, I was beginning to think that too. He spends a lot of time with rather suspicious-looking people and I think they may be (2) to doing some dishonest things.			
	Mandy:			him by threatening him if he	
	Rose:	Or he might just not realise what's happening. He was always very easily  (4) by people.			
	Mandy:				
67.4	opposite 1 HOLD	* *	1-4 to the	forms of phrasal verbs presented on the first sentence of its article a-d.	

3 TEN BREAK-INS IN ONE NIGHT 4 THIRD BREAKOUT THIS YEAR

a) Oddways Prison is clearly not as secure as it is supposed to be.

b) Police are extremely grateful to an anonymous caller who rang them last night.
c) Terrified staff were held at gunpoint at the National Bank on Brown Street yesterday.
d) A series of burglaries was reported in Brook Street and adjoining roads last night.

# Power and authority

#### The start of a political career

Interviewer: Politician:

Why did you decide to stand for Parliament? Well, I'd been a social worker for a number of years and that had opened my eyes to the huge social divisions in this country. I firmly believed that these were wrong. I wanted to help bring in<sup>2</sup> laws that would lessen the



divisions between the rich and the poor. I wanted to do away with3 taxes for the poorest members of society and to clamp down4 on rich people who were attempting to avoid paying tax. In short, I wanted to do everything I could to stand up for5 the principles that I believed in.

- <sup>2</sup> introduce
- 3 abolish or get rid of
- 1 compete in an election for an official position 4 do something to stop or limit a particular activity (noun = clampdown)
  - 5 defend something that you believe is important

#### Life in Parliament

Interviewer: So, once you were elected, how did you go ahead with your plans for social

change?

Well, although some other Members of Parliament from my party backed me Politician:

> up2, the more influential ones told me not to be too hasty. I learnt then that our party had entered into3 an agreement with the country's top business leaders and had promised not to increase taxes for the wealthy for the time being.

Interviewer: Did you stand up to4 those influential MPs?

Yes, I told them I was not in Parliament to carry out5 the wishes of big business. Politician:

- start to do something (noun = go-ahead: permission for something to start)
- <sup>2</sup> supported
- 3 officially agreed to do something
- 4 state opinions forcefully and refuse to change your mind or do what others want
- 5 do something you have been told to do

## Forming a new party

Did other MPs in your party still stand by you at this point? Interviewer:

Politician: Not all of them, but a few very good people did stick by<sup>2</sup> me and we

eventually decided to break away3 and form our own new party.

So, what happened next? Interviewer:

Unfortunately, none of us were re-elected at the next election but we have been Politician: continuing with our campaigns and hope that at some point in the not too

distant future we may be able to carry out4 our plans to make society a better

and fairer place.

continue to support

<sup>2</sup> continue to support

3 stop being part of a group because you disagree with them or do not want to be controlled by

do something that you have said you will do

See if you can find any more phrasal verbs relating to this theme by looking at newspaper articles about political issues.

ant

1

our

SS.

ant

een

er

ry

tuc

68.1 Look at these entries from Who's Who in Politics?, a book that gives biographical details about politicians. Complete the entries, using verbs from the box. Write the verbs in the correct form.

	break enter stand carry stick clamp bring stand					
1	Drummond, Patricia First for Parliament in 1992 election but was defeated. Elected in 1996 as MP for Sandford East. In 2002, introduced a bill in Parliament to down on street crime. Hobbies: badminton and judo.					
2	Dursland, Roger Elected to Parliament in 1988. MP for Hosely West. In 1991, with five other conservatives, he away from his party and formed the New Progressive Conservative Party (NPCP). In 2001, NPCP, under his leadership into discussions to merge with the Family Values Party (FVP). Hobbies: golf and fox-hunting.					
3	Eadland, Randolph-Quincy-Brough Elected to Parliament in 1983. MP for Chingwhale and Mudslappe. Member of the group which					
4	Entwhistle, Lorna-May Elected to Parliament in 1992. MP for Mickly North. Famous for publicly up to party leader Kenneth Drake in 1997 and being suspended from the Labour Party for six months. Known for by her colleagues, whatever the price. Hobbies: rambling, painting and theatre.					
68.2	Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these political interviews.					
	1 Interviewer: Will your party now change its mind about its tax plans? Politician: No, we are determined to go towards with our proposals. 2 Interviewer: So, what will happen to the present committee structure? Politician: We intend to do up with out-of-date committees and to modernise the					

- whole committee structure to make it more efficient.
- 3 Interviewer: Do you think Ms Reiner should now resign? No, I do not. I and her many supporters are determined to stick on her in Politician:
  - the face of these appalling and unfair attacks from the press.
- Did Mr Carson's remarks vesterday represent party policy? 4 Interviewer:
  - Yes, the party fully backs Mr Carson across. Politician:
- 68.3 Rewrite each sentence, replacing the underlined word with a phrasal verb expression based on the word in brackets.
  - 1 The People's Purple Party believes that the monarchy should be abolished. (DO)
  - 2 The PPP aims to introduce legislation banning fox hunting. (BRING)
  - 3 The PPP is determined to restrict smoking in public places. (CLAMP)
  - 4 The leader of the PPP says nothing will stop the Party fulfilling its aims (CARRY)
  - 5 He swears he will do all he can to defend the principles the PPP supports. (STAND)
  - 6 The PPP has got the permission to hold a demonstration next week. (GO)

# American and Australian phrasal verbs

Most phrasal verbs are used in all the countries where English is the main language. However as English has developed in different countries some phrasal verbs have emerged with regional meanings. The distinctions between regional varieties of phrasal verbs are not clearcut. In some parts of North America or Australia, UK phrasal verb equivalents are heard as frequently as their regional variations. Similarly, many phrasal verbs originating in the US or Australia are spreading to the UK through films and TV programmes.

#### North America

Here are some phrasal verbs more frequently used in North American varieties of English.

US verb	UK equivalent	meaning	example	
bawl out	tell off	speak angrily to someone	The boss bawled Jack out for for losing the deal.	
call around	phone/ring round	telephone several people, often in order to find out information (in UK English call around usually means to visit someone)	I'll call around and see if I can g a good price.	
figure out	suss out or work out	find the solution to a problem or the answer to something	Let's try to figure out how much I owe you.	
goof off	mess about/ around	behave stupidly or to waste time doing unimportant things	Tom spent too much time goofing off and failed his exams.	
vash up freshen up clean your hands and face with soap and water (in UK English wash up means to wash the dishes)		I'm sure you'd like to wash up after your journey.		

US English sometimes adds a particle where UK English would use the verb on its own. For example, an American might say Wait up! or Listen up! rather than Wait! or Listen! These are used mainly as imperatives and the up emphasises the idea that the speaker is giving a command. Americans can also visit with friends or meet with colleagues, whereas a British speaker would just visit or meet them.



#### Australia

Here are some phrasal verbs which are typical of Australian English.

Australian verb	UK equivalent	meaning	example	
barrack for	cheer for	give support to a team or person	I'll be barracking for you in the competition tomorrow.	
belt into	throw yourself into	begin to do something quickly and with a lot of effort	We just belted into the job and got it finished in an hour.	
get into	lay into	criticise	She really got into me, I didn't think I deserved so much criticism.	
shoot do a runner leave a place suddenly and often secretly		He's not here any more. He shot through a couple of days ago.		

# Exercises

5

ver

is or

h

ng

ter

or e

h

sm.

69.1	Match the questions on the left with the most likely American English replies on the right.
	1 Would you like to wash up? 2 What's wrong with the TV? 3 Why is she so upset? 4 Where will you buy your new TV? 5 Where's Jo gone? 6 Why d'you think you failed the test? Dunno. I can't figure out why it's not working. To visit with some friends. Dunno. I'll call around a few places. Because I goofed off so much. Her parents have just bawled her out. Sure. Where's the restroom?
69.2	1 Cheryl is very upset because Lance has just before their wedding. 2 Joeline really Mel for leaving the flat in such a mess.
	3 Bruce tends to a job without thinking it through first. 4 Have you decided who you're going to in the game tomorrow?
69.3	Here are some things that British people might say. Write what an American or an Australian might say instead.
	1 I expect your grandmother will want to freshen up when she arrives.
	American:  2 The teacher laid into me for doing such a bad essay.  Australian:
	3 Will lost his job for skiving off to go to a concert. American:
	4 Suzie threw herself into the spring cleaning and the house was soon transformed.  Australian:
	5 Could you phone around to find the cheapest place to rent a car?  American:
	6 I can't work out why he's behaving so oddly. American:
	7 He did a runner last month and the police have been looking for him ever since.  Australian:
	8 I'll be ready soon. Wait! American:
	9 I'm visiting my aunt at the weekend. Would you like to come too? American:
	Hi! Welcome to our Texas home! Would you like to wash up after your long journey?

# New phrasal verbs

Many new phrasal verbs are invented in English every year. Some are invented because of social change and the need to develop words to describe new phenomena. These new phrasal verbs are particularly common in informal language and are frequently used by the media and young people so as to sound up-to-date and lively.

# New phrasal verbs particularly used by the media and young people

phrasal verb	meaning	example	
be partied out have had enough of parties because you have been to so many		After a whole week of birthday celebrations, I feel totally partied out!	
big up sth or praise something very highly big sth up		He bigged up that new film but when went to see it I was really disappointed	
bliss out become or make someone become totally happy and relaxed		They blissed out on music.	
buy into sth	completely believe in a set of ideas	I don't really <b>buy into</b> all that homeopathic medicine stuff.	
chill out relax completely, or not allow things to upset you		Chill out! Life's too short to get so stressed!	
sex up sth or make something seem more exciting than it really is		Sports promoters are trying to sex up cricket for the younger generation.	
text back sb or send a text message in reply text sb back		I'll text you back when my meeting finishes.	

# More examples of new phrasal verb expressions

Hi, Tanya

How are things with you? Better than with me, I hope. I feel totally stressed-out.

Things started badly when I was late for work today - I needed some money and stopped at a shop where I bought a load of things I didn't really need but they still refused me cashback2.

Then when I got to work I discovered that today wasn't a dress-down3 day as I'd thought - and everyone else was looking smart while I'd come in my jeans. Then I discovered that all the e-mails I sent yesterday have bounced back<sup>4</sup> to me. I feel like screaming! I've been working soooo hard for soooo long - I think I'm suffering from burnout5!

I wish I had loads of money - I'd go and veg out in the Caribbean.

Penny

- (adjective) very worried and
- 2 (noun) money from your bank account that you can get from a shop when you buy goods with a debit card
- 3 (adjective) used about a day for dressing in less formal clothes than normal
- 4 didn't get to their destination and have been sent back
- 5 (noun) the condition of being ill or tired because you have been working too hard
- 6 relax by doing nothing (informal)

Listen and look out for new phrasal verbs when you are watching a film or TV or reading a newspaper or magazine.

# **Exercises**

asal

L

t!

n l sd.

а

h a

)[

and

ill

nal)

HEL

- 70.1 Complete these sentences with words from the opposite page.
  - 1 This hotel is so awesome, man. I could just ....... out on this view for the whole weekend.

  - 3 The government has been accused of \_\_\_\_\_\_up a report on economic growth.
  - 4 I don't ...... into her theories about global corruption, do you?

  - 6 I haven't got any money. Let's see if we can get some ....................... when we're at the supermarket.
  - 7 Let's rent a video and just veg \_\_\_\_\_ at home this evening.
  - 8 Nearly one in six teachers suffers from \_\_\_\_\_\_ at some point in their career.
- 70.2 Answer these questions using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.
  - 1 What will probably happen if you get an e-mail address wrong?
  - 2 What phrasal verb connects vegetables and relaxation?
  - 3 What phrasal verb connects cold weather and relaxation?
  - 4 What might the result be if you work too hard for too long?
  - 5 What is the money called which you can get in a supermarket by paying for more than the cost of the goods you're buying?
  - 6 Which common adjective has combined with up to form a new phrasal verb?
  - 7 What phrasal verb is based on a noun meaning ecstasy or complete happiness?
  - 8 What do you call a day at work when everyone comes in informal clothes?
  - 9 What could you do if someone texted you?
  - 10 Find three phrasal verbs from the opposite page that are connected with relaxation.
  - 11 Find three words from the opposite page that are connected with modern technology.
  - 12 Find two words from the opposite page that are connected with being tense.
- 70.3 Write responses to these statements, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

EXAMPLE Have you got any money with you? No, 1'll get some cashback.

- 1 Let's just have a really relaxing holiday, doing nothing much at all!
- 2 Can you let me know when you get my text message?
- 3 What do you think about his idea of using aromatherapy in the office?
- 4 Don't you want to come to Joe's birthday party with me?
- 5 I thought you were going to e-mail me some information about that company?
- 6 Jane is so tense at work. She really shouldn't take things so seriously.
- 7 Why are you wearing jeans to go to work?
- 8 What did the reviews say about the concert?

Peter and Claire were chilling out beside the pool.

#### Unit I

- 1.1 1 I sent off the order last week but the goods haven't turned up yet.
  - 2 I came across an interesting book in the library. I took down the title. Here it is.
  - 3 We <u>asked</u> some friends <u>around</u> to watch a film, but the video was <u>playing up</u> and it eventually <u>broke down</u>.
  - 4 I brought up this problem at the last meeting. It's really time to sort out the problem.
  - 5 I wish he'd stop messing us about! He's put the meeting off three times and now he wants to call it off altogether.
- 1.2 1 send off = post turn up = arrive
  - 2 come across = find take down = write
  - 3 ask around = invite home play up = not work properly break down = stop working
  - 4 bring up = mention sort out = deal with
  - 5 mess about = cause inconvenience put off = postpone call off = cancel
- 1.3 1 Correct
  - 2 Incorrect: the object must come after the particle. She looked after the children when their mother was in hospital.
  - 3 Correct
  - 4 Incorrect: this verb is used without an object. We are out and had a wonderful meal last night.
  - 5 Incorrect: the object must be human.
    It was a beautiful summer evening so I asked my new colleague out for a drink.
- 1.4 1 on 2 with 3 against 4 with 5 with

- 2.1 1 broke 2 cut 3 get 4 keep 5 pick 6 turn
- 2.2 The particle could be put in a different position in sentences 2 and 6:
  - 2 The heavy snow blocked the roads and cut off the farm completely.
  - 6 This is a really stupid programme. Please turn off the TV.
- 2.3 1 Abstract Go against here means oppose or defy.
  - 2 Concrete Cut out here means use scissors to remove the ad from the paper or magazine.
  - 3 Abstract Cut out here means stopped running.
    - Abstract Broke down here means stopped working altogether.
    - Abstract Turned up here means arrived.
  - 4 Concrete Dress up here means dress in formal clothes or your best clothes.
  - 5 Abstract Went through here means experienced
- 2.4 1 They just brushed aside my complaints; it made me very angry. Or They just brushed my complaints aside.
  - 2 I fell for his story about having lost all his money. How stupid I was!
  - 3 I couldn't make out what he was saying with all the noise.
  - 4 Could you chase up Janet's report? She promised it last week but I haven't seen it yet. Or Could you chase Janet's report up?
  - 5 If you are phoning from outside the country, leave out the first zero in the city code. Or ... leave the first zero in the city code out.

- 2.5 1 The government have issued a statement condemning the recent protests.
  - 2 The union accepted the new pay deal and cancelled the strike.
  - 3 The number of people not owning a TV set nowadays has declined dramatically.
  - 4 There was a disturbance in Blackmoor Prison yesterday and three prisoners escaped.
  - 5 Could you organise lunch for our visitors? There will be four of them.

- 3.1 1 The speaker went with her brothers.
  - 2 No, she didn't go into Di's house.
  - 3 Mark was in a higher position.
  - 4 The speaker went to the Richardson's house.
  - 5 round

ng

- 3.2 1 b 2 a 3 a 4 b
- 3.3 1 Incorrect. The object must come between the verb and the particle: I have three important meetings on tomorrow.
  - 2 Correct
  - 3 Incorrect. The object must come between the verb and the particle: Sue was only having her sisters on when she told them she was planning to become a model.
  - 4 Incorrect. This meaning of the phrasal verb have on is never used in the continuous form:
    - I have a lot of work on today.
  - 5 Correct
  - 6 Incorrect. The object must come before the particle because it is a pronoun: Ruth was wearing new jeans this morning and she had them on yesterday.
- 3.4 1 Can you move over to make room for your sister?
  - 2 When Jill finished her essay, she asked Harry to read it over.
  - 3 Jim has invited me back to his house tomorrow.
  - 4 Paul was only having his parents on when he told them he'd failed his driving test.
  - 5 What do you have on tomorrow?
  - 6 Sue had the light on in her bedroom, so I knew she was at home.
    Or Sue had on the light in her bedroom, so I knew she was at home.

#### Unit 4

4.1

phrasal verb	verb + particle noun	
show off	show-off	
warm up	warm-up	
hold on	none	
hide out	hideout	
turn over	turnover	
tear down	none	

- 4.2 1 pile-up 2 cutbacks 4 bystanders 3 outery 5 breakthrough
- 4.3 1 getaway 2 off-putting 3 throwaway 4 outgoing
- 4.4 1 get away 2 put off 3 throw away 4 go out 5 go by
- 4.5 1 I was looking for a way to turn off the photocopier There's the on/off switch.
  - 2 Have your heard about the scandal in the office? Mm, amazing goings-on!
  - 3 The economy's not doing so well these days. Yes, there's been a downturn.
  - 4 A database can organise all the information you type into it. Yes, but I don't understand the input.
  - 5 You have to consider how much you spend each month. I know, I need to watch my outgoings.

5 bygone

- 2 f 6 b 5.1 1 d 3 e 5 c 4 a
- 5.2 1 a) I put my feet in a puddle of water and my feet are very wet now.
  - b) She intervened or became involved to stop the argument from becoming more serious. The connection between the meanings is the sense of going into the middle of something.
  - 2 a) This programme is rubbish. I wish you'd turn off the TV.
    - b) The lecture so boring that I stopped paying attention.

The connection between the meanings is the sense of a break in continuity.

- 3 a) There's a hole in my bag. I think my pen must have fallen from the bag onto the ground or floor.
  - b) He stopped going to college before the end of his course and became a mechanic. The connection between the meanings is the sense of leaving a place or environment.
- 4 a) We fixed the boxes to the roof of the car by using ropes.
  - b) Mark dreams of travelling but he doesn't feel free to do it because he is trapped by his family and work responsibilities.

The connection between the meanings is the sense of being unable to move or being restricted.

- 5.3 1 What are you really trying to say? I wish you would say exactly what you mean!
  - 2 The teacher did all she could to repeat the vocabulary so frequently that her pupils knew it well before the exam.
  - 3 The old education system used to remove the best pupils and teach them in separate
  - 4 The noise of the children's music made it impossible for me to hear the television.
- 5.4 Suggested answer:

As the rain didn't stop, the football game was cancelled. So the team began discussing its strategy for the next match instead. We didn't leave the clubhouse until the cleaners arrived in the evening.

- 6.1 1 apart 5 along
  - 2 out 6 out
  - 3 around/round 7 our
  - 4 out

- 6.2 Suggested answers:
  - 1 Ken: Really? How did that come about?
  - 2 Ivan: Huh! Do you think it will ever come off?
  - 3 Fran: When do you think you'll come to a decision?
  - 4 Ulla: Yes, I was intending to, but right at the last minute something

came up.

6.3

ous. ing.

ts

SCORPIO \*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

You may come up against a few problems at work today, but don't worry, they're only temporary, and a new job opportunity will come up which could change your life. The pame of an old

will come up which could change your life. The name of an old friend comes up in conversation, bringing back powerful memories.

TAURUS \*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

You will come across someone who seems to share the same world view as you, but be careful, they are not what they seem to be. Don't forget that, in the end, true love comes down to finding someone you can trust.

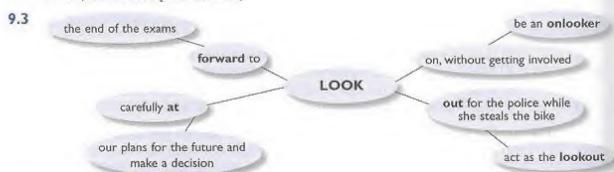


- 7.1 1 b 2 c 3 d 4 b 5 a 6 a 7 d
- 7.2 Suggested answers:
  - 1 How do you and Joe get on? We're great friends.
  - 2 What exactly are you getting at? Let me put it another way for you.
  - 3 How do you get by on a student grant? I manage somehow, though it isn't easy.
  - 4 How did you get so behind? I just wasn't organised enough.
  - 5 When are you going to get round to it? Soon, I promise.
  - 6 Shall we get together this evening? Sure, that would be nice.
  - 7 Will you manage to get away soon? I certainly hope so.
- 7.3 1 I've been planning to sort out my files but I haven't got around/round to it yet.
  - 2 I can't get over how much money they spent on their New Year's party.
  - 3 Don't try to get away with not paying your train fare an inspector might come on and want to see your ticket.
  - 4 The teachers in the school often get together after work on Fridays in a café near the school.
  - 5 They got around/round the problem of offending anyone and just invited all their friends to the wedding.
  - 6 I usually find it quite hard to understand what Professor Mactoft is getting at in his lectures.
  - 7 I hope I can get away with not sending any Christmas cards this year.
  - 8 Emily has got terribly/very behind with her thesis.

- 8.1 1 through 2 off 3 through 4 without 5 on 6 about
- 8.2 Suggested answers:
  - 1 I'm thinking of going in for the New York Marathon next year.
  - 2 My father went through some difficult times in his life.
  - 3 Unemployment and high crime levels often go together.
  - 4 He decided to go through with the operation even though there were risks.
  - 5 I refused to go along with their decision to close the youth club.
  - 6 I didn't realise how late it was and I went on studying till after midnight.
  - 7 We had to go without hot water for 24 hours while they were repairing the pipes.
  - 8 Do you think I should go in for the advanced level exam? It might be too difficult.
  - 9 She just went off without saying goodbye. I wonder if I offended her?
  - 10 What was going on in the staffroom at lunchtime? I heard someone shouting.
- 8.3 1 b 2 c 3 c 4 c

#### Unit 9

- 9.1 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 b
- 9.2 1 forward
  - 2 around/round (out is also possible here)
  - 3 after
  - 4 ahead or forward
  - 5 down
  - 6 at (over is also possible here)



- 9.4 1 find the new words in a dictionary
  - 2 visited an old friend who I hadn't seen for a long time (when you go to the town or country where that person lives)
  - 3 the situation is improving
  - 4 quickly examined the report
  - 5 examined the report (rather more carefully than looking over it)
  - 6 investigating the murder

- 10.1 1 Pete 2 Jane 3 Drew 4 Lars 5 Melanie
- 10.2 1 As soon as we had checked in at the hotel, we made straight for the beach.
  - 2 She made up some story about the bus being late, but I'm sure she just overslept.

- 3 Nobody could make out why the camera was not working properly. (The sentence is now in the active voice because make out cannot be used in the passive.)
- 4 Harry is very good at making up stories for the children; they love his tales.
- 5 Can you make out what that white thing on the horizon is? (Verb and particle cannot be separated.)
- 6 The report is made up of three sentences. (In this sense of make up the verb and particle cannot be separated.)

- 1 I like sleeping in tents but I don't like putting them up. (When the object is a pronoun, it must go before the particle.)
  - 2 Correct
  - 3 We put a new dishwasher in last week. It's wonderful. Or We put in a new dishwasher last week. It's wonderful.
  - 4 Correct
  - 5 That light is too strong. Shall we put it out? (When the object is a pronoun, it must go before the particle.)
- 11.2 1 up 4 off 2 on 5 out 6 onto or on to
- 11.3 Suggested answers:
  - 1 Could you put the light out please. You don't need them on. Or Could you put out the light ...
  - 2 They're putting up some new buildings near the railway station. Or They're putting some new buildings up ...
  - 3 The Boy Scouts put their tent up very quickly and then started unpacking their things. Or The Boy Scouts put their tent up ...
  - 4 Could we possibly put our meeting back to 10 o'clock? Or Could we possibly put back our meeting ...
  - 5 When we moved into our new house we decided to put in a new, more attractive fireplace. Or ... we decided to put a new, more attractive fireplace in.
  - 6 Can you put that CD on, please. I work better with music in the background.
- 3 d 11.4 1 b 2 e 4 a 5 c

#### Unit 12

ut

12.1 I bought a new jacket but it had a mark on it so I took it back.

The shop assistant took me offside and told me that if I was prepared to keep the jacket she would take away

ten per cent. I didn't really take in what she was saying at

first, but once I understood, I decided to take her over on the offer.

1 aside off 1 up

- 12.2 1 Kim: OK, OK. Sorry, I shouldn't have said it. I take it back. Or I take back what I said.
  - Yes, she's really taken to it. She's so taken up with it that she's stopped going 2 Clare: to the swimming pool.
  - Well, I'm not surprised! I warned you not to take it apart in the first place. 3 Len: not take apart it)

4 Miriam: Well, why don't you take up golf? Or ... take golf up?

5 Paul: It's what you get when you take £15 away from £45. Or It's what you get

when you take away £15 from £45.

6 Terry: Yes, teaching 28 hours a week really takes it out of me.

7 Kersty: Yes, he just took off without even saying goodbye.

#### Unit 13

#### 13.1 Possible answers:

1 She needs to tidy up the kitchen.

- 2 She needs to sweep up the food the child has dropped on the floor. Or She needs to sweep up the rubbish from the floor.
- 3 She must hang up the coat.

4 Toys are jumbled up on the floor.

- 5 When she has cleared everything up, she might feel tired but happy.
- 13.2 1 turned or showed
  - 2 liven
  - 3 chop
  - 4 shows or turns
  - 5 opened
- 13.3 2 a or d 3 c 4 a or b 5 c 6 d 7 bord 8 6 1 b
- 13.4 1 The up can be left out of the following sentences:

I spent all morning yesterday clearing (up) my study.

After that I tried to tidy (up) my bedroom.

There were dirty clothes all jumbled (up) in a pile on the floor.

Then I discovered the washbasin was clogged (up) in the bathroom, so I had to

By that time I'd used (up) all my energy ...

Eat (up) your vegetables, children!

Drink (up) your juice!

Paul's used (up) all the milk.

She's just opened (up) a restaurant serving exotic food from different countries. No, she has a business partner and they divide (up) the work – and the profits!

She spends half the day chopping (up) food and cleaning the kitchen.

In the other example sentences on the opposite page the up is essential.

- 2 In the sentences where the word up is not essential, using it seems to add a meaning of: - either something being done completely (tidy up, clear up, jumble up, clog up, eat up, drink up, use up).
  - or something being made into lots of small pieces (divide up, chop up). This meaning can be seen in verbs such as smash up, cut up, tear up.

- 1 I'll show you out, if you like.
  - 2 For some reason my name was left out of the guest list.
  - 3 I've locked myself out of my car.
  - 4 He can see/show himself out there's no need to take him there.
  - 5 She cut out pictures of her pop idol from the music magazines.
  - 6 The security guard let us out of the building site.

- 14.2 1 lost
  - 2 try
  - 3 help
  - 4 locked
  - 5 cut
  - 6 show or see, see, let
- 14.3 1 He's locked himself out of his car.
  - 2 She's left out the letter E. Or She's left the letter E out.
  - 3 The DVD of Star Lords video is coming out soon. Or Star Lords is coming out on DVD soon.
- 14.4 1 c 2 e 3 a 4 d 5 b

- 15.1 1 sold
  - 2 broke
  - 3 clear or slip or run (Clear suggests that the speaker is more annoyed.)
  - 4 sec
  - 5 head or slip (Slip emphasises the idea of leaving discreetly. Clear would sound too abrupt and informal in this context.)
  - 6 dozed
  - 7 send
  - 8 lift or lifting
- 15.2 1 It won't take her long to run off the letters you asked her to do.
  - 2 I often doze off in boring lectures.
  - 3 Let's try and slip off before the others wake up.
  - 4 In the middle of a long speech the actor suddenly broke off and ran off the stage.
  - 5 I've sent all the students' exam results off. Or I've sent off all the students' exam results.
  - 6 The school disco has put her off discos in general. Or The school disco has turned her off discos in general.
  - 7 Tell that boy in our front garden to clear off he's annoying the dog.
  - 8 Fortunately, he laughed off the criticism of his acting. Or He laughed the criticism of his acting off.
- 15.3 Author's answers:
  - 1 I think I'd probably just laugh it off.
  - 2 I'd be most likely to doze off in front of a political discussion.
  - 3 My husband, son and dog usually see me off if I go on a journey on my own.
  - 4 I can usually run off an English essay quickly as long as the subject is not too difficult.
  - 5 A lecturer might break off in the middle of a talk if someone raised their hand to ask a question.
  - 6 If you plan to slip off during a party, you're intending to go quietly without letting anyone know that you have gone.
  - 7 If someone tells some children to 'clear off', they probably feel cross or annoyed with them.
  - 8 I might be put off eating my dinner if I saw a hair on the plate.

of:

up,

ng.

- 15.4 1 I'm going to see James off at the airport tomorrow. Or I'm going to see off James at the airport tomorrow.
  - 2 I've just sent off a letter to Pauline. Or I've sent a letter to Pauline off.
  - 3 The rocket is due to lift off tomorrow at noon. (Note that there is also a noun lift-off-The lift-off is due at noon tomorrow.)
  - 4 I hope I've managed to turn him off the idea of redecorating the house. Or I hope I've managed to put him off the idea of redecorating the house.
  - 5 I dozed off when all the others went off to play tennis.
  - 6 We're planning to head off in the early evening.

- 16.1 1 I read the gardening article you gave me then passed it on to a friend who's also interested in plants.
  - 2 Do you think she's really angry, or do you think she's just putting it on?
  - 3 He looks very pale and tired. Something is clearly weighing on/upon him. Or Something is clearly weighing on/upon his mind.
  - 4 It's a lovely jacket. Try it on.
  - 5 I'm going to keep on working until I've finished this report.
  - 6 You can rely/depend/count on/upon Brian.
- 16.2 1 False, because keep on means to continue to do something, and Anwar has decided to tell Oscar the new tomorrow.
  - 2 False, because take in means to reduce the width of a piece of clothing, and Alice's skirt was too loose.
  - 3 True
  - 4 True
  - 5 False, because count on means rely on, and Bob has been able to rely on his parents' support.
  - 6 True
- 16.3 1 Hey, that man just pushed in that taxi should have been ours!
  - 2 Mary's bad news has been weighing on my mind all day.
  - 3 I need time for the news to sink in.
  - 4 I couldn't leave the room because someone had locked me in. (You are locked out of a room if you cannot get in.)
  - 5 Phrasal verbs may seem hard but you must keep on trying.
  - 6 You'll never guess who called in at the office today!

#### Follow up

Possible answers:

pass on = to die

e.g. I'm so sorry to hear that your dad has passed on.

take in = to let someone stay in your house

e.g. She took me in for a month while the building work was done on my house.

rub sth in (informal) = to talk to someone about something which you know they want to forget because they feel bad about it

e.g. I know I shouldn't have failed the exams, but there's no need to keep rubbing it in.

: the

ff:

've

to

skirt

fa

- 1 We know that Jamie's luggage is heavy and/or that there is a lot of it.
  - 2 Yes, but she's trying to eat less chocolate than she used to. Though she would probably be quite happy if she could cut it out totally. [stop eating it completely]
  - 3 He wrote it rather than taped it.
  - 4 No, it has closed permanently, not just for the evening.
  - 5 Perhaps they did it because the bushes were so big that they were blocking the light or blocking the path.
- 17.2 1 shut 2 cut 3 hand 4 chopped 5 keep 6 go
- 1 Read through, look through and go through are all possible. Using through perhaps 17.3 suggests more thoroughness than over which can be quite superficial. However, the difference is very slight.
  - 2 They all share an idea of change or of moving from one state or time to another: stay over = staying from one day to the next get over = change from feeling bad to feeling better fall over = change from a vertical to a horizontal position
  - 3 a) heaviness which causes difficulty
    - b) put on paper
    - c) move in the direction of the ground
    - d) stop an activity
    - e) reduce a number or amount, or not let it rise
  - 4 a) communicating or expressing clearly
    - b) move to make more room for someone else
    - c) examine to make sure they are correct
    - d) hit it with their foot so that it spills
    - e) flow over the side of the pan

- 1 mess about/(a)round behave stupidly or waste time
  - spend time somewhere not doing very much 2 hang about/(a)round
  - 3 lie about/(a)round lie down doing very little
  - 4 sit about/(a)round spend time sitting down and doing very little
  - 5 laze about/(a)round relax, enjoy yourself and do very little
- 18.2 1 lies or lazes 2 hanging 3 sitting 4 lazing or lying 5 messing
- 18.3 Suggested answers:
  - 1 Do you want to wait/stick around after the meeting? I finish work at 5 p.m. and I could show/take you (a)round the old town.
  - 2 Nothing much happened at the demonstration. We just stood about/(a)round and held our banners up.
  - 3 They spend most weekends just hanging/messing about/(a)round in their boat; they don't really sail it seriously.
  - 4 On my first day, the boss showed/took me (a)round the workshop and introduced me to various people I'd be working with.
  - 5 At the drinks party people were just milling about/(a)round hoping to find someone they knew.
  - 6 Look, I'm sorry, I don't want to mess you about/around, but I wonder if we could postpone our meeting till next week?

- 18.4 1 I've got to leave now, but I'll see you somewhere or other.
  - 2 Don't tell me what to do.
  - 3 I'm just looking to see what you have.
  - 4 My suitcase got a bit damaged on the plane.
  - 5 He told the kids to stop behaving so badly.

- 19.1 2 c 3 a 4 f 5 d
- 19.2 1 sent 5 put 6 could do 2 lives
  - 3 go 7 stick 4 couldn't ask 8 catching
- 19.3 1 go, with
  - 2 call for
  - 3 dying for
  - 4 dealt with
  - 5 catch up with
- 19.4 1 I couldn't put up with such noisy neighbours as yours.
  - 2 It's been such a busy week. I'm dying for the weekend.
  - 3 Jean's shoes go perfectly with her handbag.
  - 4 All the students at his university were rooting for Kyle in the golf championship.
  - 5 I couldn't ask for a better job.
  - 6 Stella lives for her grandson.

- 20.1 Possible answers:
  - 1 Let me take you through the way we do things here.
  - 2 Don't worry, I saw through Leo the first moment I met him.
  - 3 I'm so sorry. I set my alarm but slept through it.
  - 4 Could you go through these figures and see if you can find any mistakes?
  - 5 You don't need to read it in detail. Just flick/flip/look through it.
  - 6 Well, she has lived through some terrible things over the last few years.
- 20.2 1 take or took, take 4 bite
  - 2 bite 5 go
  - 3 send 6 answer
- 20.3 Suggested answers:
  - 1 Joe rang while you were out. Please could you call/phone/ring him back. (not call/phone/ring back him)
  - 2 I don't like these trousers I bought today. I think I'll take them back. (not take back them)
  - 3 Harry missed his train this morning because he slept through his alarm. (not he slept his alarm through)
  - 4 Ellen isn't really reading the magazine; she's just flicking/flipping through it. (not flicking/flipping it through)
  - 5 I wanted to tell her how upset I was but I managed to bite it back. (not bite back it)

- 21.1 1 At the supermarket yesterday Julia ran into Martin.
  - 2 Kim is getting over his broken heart by throwing himself into his studies.
  - 3 When she saw me dressed up as a pirate she burst into laughter.
  - 4 He doesn't think before he speaks so don't read too much into his words.
  - 5 In your essay you should have gone more fully into the causes of the war.
  - 6 We were disagreeing about the film and then Io entered into the argument.
  - 7 The police are doing all they can to look into what happened.
- 21.2 1 running away
  - 2 tidy away or pack away
  - 3 stay away from
  - 4 locked herself away
  - 5 sent away for
  - 6 tear yourself away
- 21.3 Suggested answers:
  - 1 I was very surprised when Helen burst into tears/laughter/song.
  - 2 It makes sense to stay away from dangerous parts of town at night.
  - 3 My best friend always throws himself into everything he does.
  - 4 Sometimes I'd really like to run away from all my problems and go and live on an island.
  - 5 I find this job so stressful. I really should look into other possible careers.
  - 6 When I went to the town centre last week I ran into my old headmistress.
  - 7 Before moving house I spent weeks packing away all my personal belongings.
  - 8 Whenever visitors are coming, I usually tidy away anything that is lying around.
- 21.4 1 c 2 e 3 a 4 d 5 b
- 21.5 Suggested answers:

A number of the phrasal verbs with into are connected with going into something in detail: look into sth, read sth into sth, go into sth, throw yourself into sth.

Other phrasal verbs with into are connected with starting something: burst into sth, enter into sth, launch into sth.

Others are connected with meeting someone or something: run into sth/sb, bump into sth/sb, bang into sth.

The phrasal verbs with away are all connected with separation, keeping something at a distance or putting something in a separate place.

#### Unit 22

- 22.1 1 pressed 4 bring, fit
  - 5 press 2 run 3 clock, clock 6 take
- 22.2 Suggested questions:
  - 1 What do you usually do at weekends? Or How do you spend your evenings?
  - 2 How did he fail the exam? Or Why did he drop out of the course?
  - 3 How long have you known him/her?

at his

=)

4 Is that girl a friend of yours?

- 5 Why do you always carry a personal stereo? Or Why have you got your portable chess game with you?
- 6 Shall we leave now?
- 22.3 1 We had to wait an hour for the next train, so we went for a walk to while away the
  - 2 A young French woman latched on to me at the party last night. I think she wanted to practise her English.
  - 3 I clock on at 7.30 a.m. every morning. Or I clock on at work at 7.30 a.m. every
  - 4 We have to finish this job by six o'clock. We'd better press on with it.
  - 5 I just don't know how we're going to fit three meetings in before the summer break. Or I just don't know how we're going to fit in three meetings before the summer break.

#### Unit 23

#### 2 0 3 a 4 d 23.1 1 b 5 a

- 23.2 1 In (a) the lecture simply went on for longer than expected. In (b) the person found it slow and boring.
  - 2 In (a) John delayed us whereas in (b) he made us move or work faster.
  - 3 In (a) the song reminds the speaker of their childhood whereas in (b) the speaker simply says that the song was written when he was a child.
  - 4 In (a) the children were walking much more quickly than the speaker whereas in (b) the speaker was trying to make the children walk faster.
- 23.3 1 Time seems to pass more quickly as you get older.
  - 2 Music and smells have great powers to remind you of the past.
  - 3 Mr Jones looks or behaves like people used to look or behave in the past; in other words, he is very old-fashioned in some way.
  - 4 We should forget what happened in the past. (The implication is that there have been problems, arguments or conflicts in the past, but that you now want to make peace.)
  - 5 You never know what the future holds for you.

## 23.4 Suggested answers:

- 1 The old oil lamps in my grandfather's house looked like leftovers from a bygone era.
- 2 The smell of chalk always takes me back to my schooldays.
- 3 There was a hold-up on the motorway because of an accident.
- 4 Sometimes, if the textbook is boring, the lesson seems to drag on.
- 5 We can never know what lies ahead.
- 6 There are some leftover pizzas from the party. Would you like one?

#### Unit 24

# **24.1** Suggested answers:

- 1 The fields stretch away to the horizon.
- 2 The house is tucked away in the forest.
- 3 There are small houses spread out over the landscape.
- 4 The house on the island is cut off from the mainland.
- 5 The room opens onto a balcony.

less.

l to

'eak.

it

mply

) the

en :.)

a.

- 24.2 1 stay in
  - 2 stay out
  - 3 leave something behind
  - 4 stay behind or stay on
  - 5 brighten up
  - 6 stay on
  - 7 call back
- 24.3 1 Heft my floppy disk behind at the computer class. I'll have to go back and see if it's still in the machine.
  - 2 When you were a teenager, did your parents allow you to stay out late?
  - 3 Shop assistant: I'm afraid your photographs aren't ready yet. It will be another couple of hours.

Okay. I'll call back tomorrow. Customer:

- 4 We've decided to paint the kitchen to brighten it up a bit. It's so gloomy and dull at the moment.
- 5 I'm really tired. I think I'll stay in tonight and not go to the party after all, sorry.

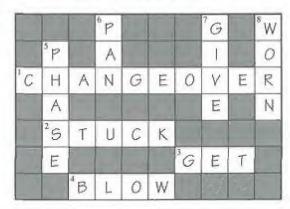
6 The teacher asked the naughty boy to stay behind after the lesson.

7 We loved the resort so much we decided to stay on another week, even though our friends had gone home.

#### Unit 25

- 25.1 5 sparked off 1 brings back 3 lies behind 2 spring from 4 stir up 6 set, off
- 25.2 1 off 7 stir 3 bring 5 ruled 2 set 4 off 6 off 8 pay
- 25.3 1 fireworks 4 memories 2 suspects 5 reforms 3 violence 6 feelings
- 25.4 1 stir up 5 sparked off or triggered off 2 pay him back 5 ruled out
  - 6 sprang from 3 triggered off or sparked off

- 26.1 1 picked up or gone up 2 heating up 3 going up 4 filling up
- 26.2 1 woke up 2 looking up
- 26.3



- 26.4 1 The changeover to the new accounting system has caused endless problems.
  - 2 There was a lot of trouble in the office last month, but it's all blown over now and things are back to normal.
  - 3 Shall I heat up that pizza for you? I expect it's gone cold by now.
  - 4 All these old telephones will be phased out over the next year and we'll get new, digital ones.

- 27.1 1 fall through 4 take off or catch on 2 take over 5 bring off or pull off
  - 3 downfall 6 come off
- 27.2 1 S 4 S 7 S 2 S 5 S 8 F 3 F or S\* 6 S 9 S
  - \*If you are muddling through, you are managing, even if not very well, so it could be S as well as F.
- 27.3 History muddle through

Maths build on

English catch up

Geography stay ahead

Physics pay off

#### 27.4 Suggested answers:

- 1 Miranda walked into a job in London.
- 2 Jim's hard work eventually paid off.
- 3 The company is hoping to pull off an important deal this week.
- 4 Rachel never expected her singing career to take off so quickly.
- 5 The project may well fall through because of a lack of funds.
- 6 Teri finds it hard to keep up with the other kids in her class.
- 7 The new design of mobile phone has caught on almost overnight.
- 8 Top software companies are finding it increasingly difficult to stay ahead (of their competitors).

#### Unit 28

- 28.1 1 started, outset, packed
  - 2 set, polish or finish, broke, finish or polish
  - 3 give, cut, fizzled
  - 4 drying, call

#### 28.2 Author's answers:

- 1 I should set about filling in my annual tax forms.
- 2 I was planning on going to Spain at New Year, but had to call off the trip because I was ill.
- 3 Playing the guitar helps me to wind down.
- 4 I eat too much chocolate and should cut down on that.
- 5 I once started tennis lessons but gave them up after a few weeks.

#### Follow up

Possible answers:

start on sth = to begin to deal with something

start over (American English) = to start doing something from the beginning because you did not do it well the first time

start up = to start to work (of a vehicle or engine)

#### Unit 29

ital

as

- **29.1** 1 It is probably on a high shelf or in a high cupboard.
  - 2 No, she's only gone for a short time, or at least that is what the speaker is implying.
  - 3 He has to move closer to someone.
  - 4 Sonia has to move more because she has to actually change seats rather than just move a little bit further along.
  - 5 No, the speaker expects you to use your hands to tear it.
  - 6 She's probably about to go outside because she is putting her coat on.
- 29.2 1 The children helped me to wrap up the parcel. Or The children helped me to wrap the parcel up.
  - 2 Can you tie up Billy's shoe laces for him? Or Can you tie Billy's shoe laces up for him?
  - 3 Pick up the ball at once. Or Pick the ball up at once.
  - 4 Slow down it's beginning to snow.
  - 5 Jill loves blowing up balloons! Or Jill loves blowing balloons up.
- 29.3 Suggested answers:
  - 1 The tree has fallen down.
  - 2 She's reaching out to put money in the machine.
  - 3 He's blowing up a balloon. Or He's blowing a balloon up.
  - 4 He's picking up a toy car. Or He's picking a toy car up.
  - 5 He's tearing up a photo. Or He's tearing a photo up.
  - 6 She's wrapping up a present. Or She's wrapping a present up.
- 29.4 1 slowed 2 reached 3 pop 4 blow

- 30.1 1 stamp 2 root 3 falling 4 screwed or tore 5 knocked
- **30.2** I tear apart The lions are tearing a dead animal apart. Or The lions are tearing apart a dead animal.
  - 2 put out The firefighters are putting out a fire. Or The firefighters are putting a fire out.
  - 3 pull down or tear down He is pulling/tearing the building down. Or He is pulling/tearing down the building.
- 30.3 1 Gisela: Yes, well, it was a bit of a setback but I've applied for a different grant, and hope I'll get that.
  - 2 Dan: Well, my parents have lent me some money to see me through while I'm studying.
    - Note that: 'see through me' is not possible here. 'See through somebody' means to become aware that they are deceiving you; see Unit 20.
  - 3 Hilda: Yes, but they are fighting back now and their union is much stronger.
  - 4 Bob: Oh yes, he bent over backwards to help me.

5 Eric: Yes, I made an innocent comment and she just turned on me.

Note that 'turned me on' is not possible here. 'Turn somebody on' means to

excite them; see Unit 52.

6 Gareth: OK, don't worry, I'll see to it.

#### Unit 31

- 31.1 1 Mandy 2 Paula 3 Dennis and Anne 4 Ali
- 31.2 1 turn down 6 bubbling over 7 deal with 2 ordering, about or around 3 leave, aside 8 keep to 4 get on to 9 pass on

5 turn to

31.3 1 speak up = to speak more loudly

2 get through to someone = to make someone understand

- 3 speak up = to publicly express your opinions about something or someone, especially in order to support them
- 4 get across something or get something across = to successfully communicate an idea to other people

5 butt in (informal) = to interrupt a conversation or discussion, often stopping someone who is talking

6 dry up = to stop speaking because you forget what to say next

#### Unit 32

- 32.1 1 freshen up
  - 2 dress up
  - 3 (to) do up or (to) do my dress up
  - 4 wrap up, put on or put a scarf on
- 32.2 1 I don't want to wear my new jacket tonight. You can put it on if you like. Note that pronouns always go before the particle.
  - 2 Although the house looked rundown from the outside, it was very smart/clean/ well-maintained inside.
  - 3 If you're going out in the snow, make sure you wrap up well.

4 Do you think this scarf and coat go together OK?

5 He hates the way his ears stick out.

- 6 It takes me a long time to get the kids ready in the morning because Sammy and Lisa can't do up their own shoes yet.
- 7 Bill and his brother are so alike I can't tell one from the other.
- 8 It's a very formal party, so you need to / you should dress up.
- 32.3 1 rundown 2 in 3 stands\* 4 stick 5 set \*sticks is also possible but sounds less formal.
- **32.4** 1 There are many examples.
  - 2 The speaker thinks the performance was special, and probably better than the performances of the other actors in the film.
  - 3 Jan's writing is better.
  - 4 Yes, it does.
  - 5 The speaker thinks this will improve the series.

to

y in

to

ne

32

- 1 If a performance is booked up, you can't get tickets for it.
  - 2 If people are said to pour in (a place), you know that there are a lot of people.
  - 3 If people cram into a room, the room is then very crowded.
  - 4 Events like poetry readings or poetry competitions might be put on to tie in with National Poetry Week.
  - 5 A comedian is more likely to send up politicians than post office workers.
  - 6 An actor would need someone to stand in for them if they lost their voice or were sick.
- 33.2 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 1 5 c
- 33.3 1 called off 4 taking off or sending up\*
  - 2 standing in 5 packed out
  - 6 tie in 3 put on
  - \*If the imitation is very humorous, then send up is more appropriate.
- 33.4 5 sending up 1 putting on
  - 6 taking off or sending up 2 ties in
  - 7 walked out 3 was booked up
  - 4 cram into 8 put off

#### Unit 34

- 34.1 1 I know, but I'm sure everything will turn out all right in the end.
  - 2 I must have mixed/muddled them up. Sorry.
  - 3 I've run up against that problem too.
  - 4 OK. I'll see if I can get out of my trip to London.
  - 5 I wouldn't bank on it.
  - 6 I know, but try to rise above it.
- 34.2 1 revolves 2 mix-up 3 back 4 crop 5 turns
- 34.3 Suggested answers:
  - 1 hot up 4 calmed down
  - 5 to back off 2 caught up
  - 3 were thrown together 6 bank on his help

- 35.1 1 track down 3 turns to 5 come under 6 check up on 2 drawn on/upon 4 points out
- 35.2 Hannah and Bill were playing a game. Hannah had thought of a football star and Bill was trying to find out who it was. He turned to his mother but she pointed out that she knew absolutely nothing about football. He would have to try to track the answer down himself (or track down the answer himself) and to watch out for any clues that Hannah might deliberately give. After ten minutes Bill still hadn't latched on so he gave up and Hannah told him the answer: Ronaldo.
- 35.3 Suggested answers:
  - 1 You might check up on a person, facts or something you've been told.
  - 2 You might point out an important fact, a mistake or a connection between two things.
  - 3 Someone might find out some information, a secret or someone's date of birth.

- 4 You might take in something you're told, good or bad news, or the implications of a situation.
- 5 A secret, a rude remark or a taboo word might slip out.
- **35.4** 1 make someone notice something by showing it with your finger
  - 2 try to see
  - 3 find by using physical senses
  - 4 leave quickly and quietly
  - 5 turn your body to face

- 36.1 1 c 2 d 3 a 4 e 5 b
- 36.2 It's time you sorted yourself out. You're 23 now and you still haven't got a job! You've got to face up to reality. It's about time you realised that the secret of success lies in taking positive action. Over the next couple of days, I will expect you to come up with a few ideas about how you're going to improve your situation, or else you can go and live somewhere else. Why don't you go and see about that job Uncle Herbert offered you at his factory? I've offered to help talk things over with you, but you never seem to want my help. Yet you don't deal with things yourself. Sometimes I think you're just a waste of space!
- 36.3 it's just dawned on me: I've suddenly realised or understood something rules out: makes something impossible or unsuitable the answer jumps out at you: the answer can immediately be seen work through things: deal with a problem by talking about it in detail sort things out: make a decision by discussing it with someone else or thinking about it carefully

- **37.** I over *or* through 2 weigh 3 by 4 ahead 5 think 6 sleep
- 37.2 Possible answers:
  - 1 I probably would run an important decision by my parents first, especially one concerning my professional life.
  - 2 I usually try to make myself sleep on it first as things often seem better after a good night's sleep.
  - 3 I'd prefer to do without a car, My holidays are really important to me.
  - 4 When planning ahead for their retirement, people might contribute to a pension or they might try to save money regularly.
  - 5 People might chicken out of giving a speech, or going paragliding, or asking someone to go out with them on a date.
- **37.3** Suggested answers:
  - 1 We should allow for the fact that he is still only young, (not We should allow the fact for that he is still young.)
  - 2. I really can't help you as I have a lot of things on today, (not I have on a lot of things
  - 3 He wants to opt out of art classes at school next year so he can do extra music. (not He wants to opt of art classes out ...)

- 39.3 1 She didn't take it seriously and refused to think about it seriously.
  - 2 We don't know, but we know that it's not the USA because she was just teasing Derek.
  - 3 No, they didn't have much choice in the matter.
  - 4 We know she wasn't robbed and that she isn't always truthful because she was trying to trick Harry by inventing the story.
  - 5 Yes, it does want reform.
- 39.4 1 pressing for or calling for
- 4 call for or press for
- 2 bring; around/round or talk; around/round
- 5 rope in 6 talk; into
- 3 putting forward

40.1 stand out and outstanding

> An outstanding person is someone who stands out or is noticeable because of special, positive characteristics.

show off and a show-off

A show-off is a person who shows off or tries to impress others in an annoying way.

screw up and screwed-up

If a person is screwed-up, then in some way their experiences in life have screwed up or damaged their personality or their state of mind, making them unhappy or confused.

- 40.2 2 Julia 3 Rana 4 Ahmed 5 Laura 6 Barry 1 Antonia
- 40.3 Suggested answers:
  - 1 Dan won the prize as his short story stood out (as the best). Or Dan won the prize as his short story stood out from all the others.
  - 2 Molly got the sack because her work just didn't measure up.
  - 3 What on earth does Gemma think she's playing at she's behaving so oddly?
  - 4 I wish Ed wouldn't show off all the time! Or I wish Ed wasn't/weren't such a show-off.
  - 5 If you screw up again, you'll lose your job.
  - 6 I know I was stupid but please don't rub it in.
  - 7 Joe's father laid into him for scratching his new car.
  - 8 Why does everyone always pick on me?

# Unit 41

- 41.1 Suggested answers:
  - a) Mind out! Hold on! Hang on! Watch out! Look out! Keep it up!
  - b) Lighten up! Steady on! Come off it! Spit it out! Step on it! Come on! Go on! Hurry up! Belt up! Fire away!

Depending on the situation and your relationship with your boss or teacher you might feel it is appropriate to use these expressions: Steady on! Hurry up! Go on! Come on!

- 41.2 1 Come on! Spit it out!
- 5 Mind out!
- 2 Come off it!
- 6 Steady on!
- 3 Hold on!
- 7 Keep it up!
- 4 Lighten up!

41.3 1 Fire away! 2 Step on it!

3 Spit it out!

rek.

1g to

E

as

off.

feel

41.4 Hang on! and Hold on! both mean wait a minute.

Possible situation: Someone is talking at great length and you want to interrupt to ask something.

Mind out! and Watch out! both mean be careful.

Possible situation: Someone is about to step in front of a car.

Hurry up! and Step on it! both mean go faster or do something faster.

Possible situation: Someone is in a taxi and wants to get to the station in time to catch a train.

#### Unit 42

#### **42.1** Suggested answers:

- 1 She's rubbing out what was written on the blackboard.
- 2 He's crossing a word out.
- 3 She's giving/handing out some books to the class.
- 4 He's giving/handing in some homework.
- 5 She's working out the sum/answer.
- 42.2 1 not pleased 2 not pleased 3 pleased 4 pleased 5 not pleased
  - 6 not pleased
- 4 missed out 42.3 1 fell behind 2 catch up 3 work out 5 messed up
- **42.4** 1 Students often play up when they are bored in class.
  - 2 The teacher rubbed out the new words from the board and then tested us. Or The teacher rubbed the new words out ...
  - 3 We have to hand in our registration forms for the exam on Friday. Or We have to hand our registration forms in ...
  - 4 I usually leave out my middle name when I am filling in forms. Or I usually leave my middle name out ...
  - 5 Some people were handing out leaflets about a demonstration in the town centre. Or Some people were handing leaflets out ...

#### 42.5 Possible answers:

- 1 You are often asked to cross out rough work in an exam so that the examiner knows which work needs to be marked.
- 2 If a teacher gives out a sheet listing all the kings and queens of Britain it is a handout. It would only be a worksheet if it also included some exercises or activities relating to the information.
- 3 Most pupils carry an eraser in their pencil cases in order to rub out mistakes that they
- 4 It would be quite easy for me to work out how many euros are equal to 250 US dollars if I had a calculator.
- 5 I think some pupils may play up in class if they find the class too easy, too difficult or too dull for them.

#### Unit 43

#### 43.1 Suggested answers:

1 I'm going to sign up for a course in statistics next year. (not I'm going to sign for a course up ...)

- 2 Several students dropped out of the Moral Philosophy course.
- 3 We break up on 20 June. (not We break on 20 June up.)
- 4 He was thrown out of university after one term. He'd done no work at all.
- 5 I can't come out tonight. I have to write up my essay for tomorrow. Or I can't come out tonight. I have to write my essay up for tomorrow.
- 6 I go back to college on 12 September. (not I go on 12 September back to college.)
- 43.2 Only breaking up would make most students happy.

Swotting up and mugging up both involve hard work.

Scraping through means only just passing an exam (but perhaps a student who had not worked hard would be happy!).

Being thrown out and dropping out show that you have not made a success of student life.

- **43.3** 1 mug up *or* swot up
  - 2 kept up
  - 3 brush up on or mug up on or swot up on or polish up (on)
  - 4 come up
  - 5 scraped through
  - 6 write up
  - 7 break up
  - 8 go back
- 43.4 Dick hardly swotted/mugged up at all for his exams. He brushed up on the history of the French Revolution, but no questions on the French Revolution came up in the exam. He was afraid that he would be thrown out of university for failing his exams. However, he did just manage to scrape through them and so he will be in college when we go back next term. He has promised to try to keep up with work next year as he is planning to sign up for a couple of quite difficult courses, including business studies. He'll have to polish up" his French because the business studies course involves spending a term in France working in a business. He thinks he can just pick up\*\* the language when he gets there, but I think he should study it before he goes because he only has school French.
  - \* We can also say: He'll have to polish his French up ...
  - \*\* We can also say: He thinks he can just pick the language up when he gets there, ...

#### Follow up

Included in the Mini dictionary are:

break away break down break in(to) break off break out

While they each have different meanings, break seems to suggest a sudden, sometimes violent or negative, event which changes a situation, for example, a marriage breaks up, a disease/epidemic breaks out, a group of people break away from another group.

- 3 g 4 e, h, i 5 e, i 6 d 44.1 1 e, h, i 2 j 7 a 8 b 9 f 10 c
- 44.2 1 read out
  - 2 dipped into
  - 3 scribble down or jot down or note down
  - 4 write it out
  - 5 make out
  - 6 fill in or fill out

- 7 note down (or, if you are in a hurry, jot down or scribble down)
- 8 read up on
- 9 turn over
- 10 jot down or note down or scribble down
- 44.3 1 cut it out 2 touch on/upon 3 tone down 4 cropped up 5 sum up

- 45.1 a) stand down, step down, knock off, lay off
  - b) fix up, pencil in
- **45.2** 1 taking 6 pull
  - 2 on
- 7 ahead
  - 3 carry
- 8 stands or steps
- 4 left
- 9 hand
- 5 in

#### 45.3 Possible answers:

- 1 Yes, please fill me in. (not Yes, please fill in me.)
- 2 Certainly, I'll follow them up later today. (not Certainly, I'll follow up them later today.)
- 3 Yes, I'll fix something up for you for next week. Or Yes, I'll fix up something for next week.
  - Note that 'pencil in something' or 'pencil something in for next week' is also possible, but means that the arrangement is not yet definite.
- 4 Well, I've been doing it for years and I thought it was time to hand over to someone else. Or ... I thought it was time to step/stand down.
- 5 Sure, why don't we pencil it in for next Tuesday afternoon. (not Sure, why don't we pencil in it for next Tuesday afternoon.)

#### 45.4 Author's answers:

- 1 These are some of the tasks I have to carry out each day reading and answering e-mails, filing and making phone calls.
- 2 I usually knock off at about 5 p.m.
- 3 Yes, most of the teachers at the language school where I used to work were laid off a few years ago.
- 4 I think you have to be well organised and good at getting on with other people in order to get ahead.
- 5 I filled in an application form and then had an interview with my current boss.

- 46.1 1 pile up 2 be snowed under 3 be tied up 4 slave away
- 46.2 Suggested answers:
  - 1 I've been slaving away in a restaurant to pay for my studies.
  - 2 Sorry, I was tied up all last week, so I couldn't go to any of the meetings.
  - 3 Paperwork has just piled up recently. I don't know where to start.
- 4 I'm sorry I can't do the report this week. I'm just snowed under. 46.3 1 on 2 out of 3 away 4 in 5 up with

I need to chase out Gerald's report so that we can keep things moving away with the European sales campaign. I know he's been working in it and I know he's been working upwards the same goals as all of us to branch up into new markets in Europe, but he's not good at sticking for things and you need to keep in it with campaigns like this one.

пр
along
on
towards
out
at
at

#### Unit 47

- **47.1** Suggested answers:
  - 1 The suspected criminal took out all the money from his bank account and has not been seen since.
  - 2 As his girlfriend is in Australia, he runs up a huge phone bill every month.
  - 3 The bill for the books we ordered came to \$40.85.
  - 4 I lent him €100 a year ago and he still hasn't paid me back. (not ... paid back me.)
  - 5 Now that I've lost my job we're going to have to cut back (on) what we spend on our weekly trip to the supermarket.
  - 6 If you pay the restaurant bill with your credit card, I'll settle up with you later.
- 47.2 1 up 2 off 3 back 4 aside 5 down (Note that knockdown is written as one word.)
- 47.3 5 d 1 b 2 c 3 c 4 a
- 47.4 Author's answers:
  - 1 I'm saving up for a new mountain bike.
  - 2 I usually take €200 out.
  - 3 I'd expect it to come to about €150.
  - 4 My mortgage is my biggest debt and I won't pay that off for years.
  - 5 I might pick up second-hand books and CDs.

- 48.1 1 beat 2 fork 4 picked or snapped 5 sell 3 skimp
- **48.2** Suggested answers:
  - 1 I could stock up on important foods such as bread, milk, fruit, vegetables and meat.
  - 2 I could splash out on some new furniture.
  - 3 I could ask him/her to knock something off the price.
  - 4 I should shop around to find the best price.
  - 5 I could suggest that we club together to buy her some flowers.

- 48.3 1 She became an Internet addict and ran up a huge telephone bill.
  - 2 We were ripped off in that restaurant. They charged us for four desserts when we only had two.
  - 3 He sold off his share in the business and went travelling round the world.
  - 4 When he offered me his tennis racket for only \$10 I snapped it up because it was still in excellent condition.
  - 5 We had to fork out for a new washing machine because our old one broke down.
- 48.4 1 rip off someone or rip someone off: a rip-off
  - 2 These verbs have noun forms:

pick up something/someone or pick something/someone up: a pick-up

Examples: It's an 8.30 a.m. pick-up tomorrow, so we'll have to get up at seven.

[a car/taxi/bus will be coming to collect us]

He drives an old pickup and wears a cowboy hat. [small truck with an open back] Economists are expecting a pick-up in house sales later this year. [an increase or

I thought she was just being friendly, then I realised it was a pick-up. [informal: attempt to form a sexual relationship with me]

sell off something or sell something off: a sell-off

Example: The company sell-off raised millions of pounds. [a sale of all or part of a business

sell out something: a sell-out

Examples: The concert was a sell-out. [all the tickets were sold]

The workers were disappointed that the union had agreed to end the strike, and they called it a sell-out. [a betrayal of principles]

#### Unit 49

n

- 49.1 1 d 2 f 3 e 5 a 6 c
- 49.2 Suggested answers:

1 Henry: Yes, they've been pouring money into farming.

2 Jan: Yes, you're right. He started up around ten years ago. Or He set up his business about ten years ago.

Yes, I'd put it at five million (euros). Or Yes, I'd say it runs to five ... 3 Jamie: Or Yes, I'd say their losses run into five ...

Yes, they're setting up a branch there. Or Yes, they're starting up a branch 4 Lianne: there. (Note that set up sounds better than start up.)

5 Fiona: Yes, the upkeep is very expensive.

49.3 1 take over 2 hire out 4 outlet 6 run to 3 turnover 5 set-up

#### Unit 50

1 Hotel operator: If you want to dial out, you have to dial 9 first. 50.1

2 It's difficult to get through to the customer helpline in the mornings.

3 I'm sorry, he's out right now. Can you ring back (or phone/call back) at about five o'clock?

4 Carole rang in to say she's not feeling well.

5 Uncle: Hi! Fine thanks. Just a minute, I'll put you on to your aunt so you can tell her all the news. (or I'll put your aunt on so you ...)

6 I'll get back to you in a few days.

				C						
				5 U	2 P			3 R		
				6 T	Н	R	0	U	G	4 H
					0		-	N		U
7 L	1	S	Т	E	N	Т	N	G		N
		9 ( - 1								

speak up = speak more loudly 50.3

hold on = wait a moment

break up = If someone who is talking on a mobile phone is breaking up, their voice cannot fully be heard.

switch off = turn an electrical device off

charge up = put electricity into a device

#### 50.4 Suggested answers:

- 1 Sorry, my mobile phone was switched off. Or Sorry, I'd switched off my mobile phone.
- 2 Sorry, the signal's breaking up and I can't hear what you're saying. Or Sorry, you're breaking up and I can't hear what you're saying.
- 3 Sorry, could you speak up? There's a lot of background noise.
- 4 Have you charged up your mobile phone?
- 5 Sorry, can you hold on just a minute?

- Positive feelings George, Mike and Anna Negative feelings - Jill, Sue, Henry, Mary and Ken
- 51.2 1 The news that I didn't have to do the exam after all cheered me up.
  - 2 Look, Joe. Calm/cool down! Getting angry won't solve the problem.
  - 3 When she heard of her friend's death she broke down and wept.
  - 4 She's (so) hung up about silly little problems at work.
  - 5 I wish you'd brighten up! You're making me feel depressed! (You can also say: I wish you'd cheer up! using cheer up without an object.)
- 51.3 1 Yes, I'm beginning to warm to it too.
  - 2 Sure, I'd jump at the chance.
  - 3 I know I do feel for them both.
  - 4 Yes, I hope he pulls himself together before his next attempt.
  - 5 Don't get carried away!
  - 6 What more can we do to cheer her up?

51.4 1 broke 2 tear 3 pull 4 up 5 to 6 felt 7 down 8 hung 9 cheer

#### Unit 52

- 1 fallen 52.1 2 falling-out 3 chat 4 hit it or pair 5 chatting 6 for 9 fit 10 ask fallen 11 hit it off or get along
- 52.2 1 My friend and I fell out last week because she thinks I'm in love with her boyfriend.
  - 2 The new student was finding it difficult to fit in, as he was older than the other students.
  - 3 When George met his new colleague he really fell for her and now he talks about her all
  - 4 Barry and David hit it off immediately when they were introduced.
  - 5 That horrible man over there was trying to chat me up. Ugh!

52.3

not

1e.

#### 5 MON

Met a really beautiful girl at the disco chatted her up but didn't ask her out. m useless!

thave fallen for the new girl in my maths class. She's fitted in well (with the group).

#### 7 WED

Nigel paired off with Kari at the party last night. Why am I jealous?

#### 8 THU

Sally Wilkes really turns me on. She's gargeous!

9 FRI

No success with the girl in the maths class. Don't think I'm the type she 9065 for

Been going out with Angela for six months now, but still can't stop chasing other girls!

#### II SUN

areg and Clare seem to be hitting it off (or getting along) these days. They think no-one has noticed! Ha-ha!

- 53.1 1 c 2 f 3 e 5 b
- **53.2** 1 My sister and her husband split up last year.
  - 2 Milly was very upset when her boyfriend finished with her. Or Milly was very upset when her boyfriend broke up with her.
  - 3 We had been growing apart for a long time, so it was better to separate properly.
- 53.3 1 make up 5 live, down
  - 2 ran off with 6 miss out
  - 3 settle down 7 settle for
  - 4 let, down 8 break off

- 54.1 1 Dermot 2 Gina 3 George 4 Michael 5 Yvette 6 Yolanda
- 54.2 1 keeping, let
  - 2 shut, keep
  - 3 pin
  - 4 talks
  - 5 poured, opened, outpouring
- 54.3 1 let on 2 gone back 3 keeping 4 owned up 5 have it out with

#### Unit 55

- 55.1 1 carry on
  - 2 takes after
  - 3 drop out
  - 4 handed down
  - 5 live up to
  - 6 become of
  - 7 bringing up
  - 8 pass for
- 55.2 Author's answers:
  - 1 I was named after a character in a book.
  - 2 I think I take after my mother in appearance.
  - 3 I probably take after my father in character.
  - 4 I think that girls usually grow up much faster than boys.
  - 5 Someone might drop out of university because of ill health or because they were not enjoying their studies.
  - 6 Someone might turn to crime if they need money to pay debts or buy drugs.
  - 7 A girl I know is only fifteen but she could easily pass for twenty in both appearance and behaviour.
  - 8 I have a tea service that has been handed down from my great-grandparents.
  - 9 I think that mothers and fathers have equally important but different roles to play in bringing up their children.
  - 10 I would like to carry on working for as long as possible as I enjoy working.
- **55.3** 1 named 6 become
  - 2 take 7 turn
  - 3 brought 8 ended or wound
  - 4 live 9 ended or wound
  - 5 dropping 10 carried

- 56.1 1 down 2 off 3 up 4 up 5 up 6 off
- 56.2 1 I've had a sore throat for a week now I just can't shake it off.
  - 2 Meg hadn't eaten anything for 48 hours and so it wasn't surprising that she passed out in the middle of her gym lesson.
  - 3 The doctors were afraid that the old man wouldn't survive the attack of pneumonia, but amazingly he pulled through and was soon on his feet again.
  - 4 I think I'm coming down with a cold I feel a bit shivery.

- 5 My thumb swelled up after I accidentally hit it with a hammer.
- 6 The sea was so rough that many people were throwing up over the side of the ship.
- 7 People usually write letters of condolence to the relatives of someone who has passed away/on.
- 8 The old lady is in great pain because she has put her hip out.
- 9 After the operation, her sister cared for her until she was completely recovered.
- 10 How do you think you came down with (or went down with) chicken pox?
- 56.3 1 Jim's uncle passed away last year.
  - 2 Sonya is fighting off a bout of flu.
  - 3 Rita is kept very busy caring for her elderly mother.
  - 4 Mary's ankles swelled up during the long flight.
  - 5 Most people usually slow down a bit as they get older.
  - 6 I think loe is going down with flu.

#### 56.4 Possible answers:

- 1 When her great-aunt passed away Mary felt very sad.
- 2 Jack broke down when he failed his final exams.
- 3 The last time I threw up was after a party where I'd eaten too much.
- 4 You can get a blocked-up nose if you have a cold or an allergy.
- 5 Kate's finger swelled up after it was hit by a hockey ball.
- 6 The best way to fight off a cold is to stay in bed and drink a lot.

#### Unit 57

- 57.1 1 join in = participate
  - 2 give in = surrender
  - 3 go for = attempt to achieve
  - 4 pull ahead = overtake
  - 5 knock out = defeat
- 57.2 1 warm-up
  - 2 knockout
  - 3 burn off (Work off would also be possible in this context.)
  - 4 work off
  - 5 warm up
  - 6 cool down

#### 57.3 Author's answers:

- 1 I work out about four times a month. Usually I go to an aerobics class.
- 2 I might warm up by doing some gentle stretches and by running on the spot.
- 3 I'd be pleased because if I pulled ahead of the other runners it means that I am winning.
- 4 Tennis is better than table tennis at burning off calories because it is more energetic than table tennis.
- 5 I'd prefer to join in a snooker game as I'm not very good at football.
- 6 A top athlete would go for the gold medal.

#### 57.4 Suggested answers:

- 1 The player or the team is kicking off. Or It is the kick-off.
- 2 The woman is burning off calories. Or The woman is working out on an exercise bike.
- 3 The athlete is warming up or is doing a warm-up. Or (if he has just done some sport) The athlete is cooling down.

**57.5** 1 told to leave 2 was defeated by 3 progressed

#### Unit 58

- 58.1 1 d 2 e 3 a 5 b
- 58.2 1 up 5 sleeping or lying
  - 2 stay 6 in
  - 3 lie 7 over
  - 4 up, up 8 oversleep
- **58.3** 1 waiting up or staying up
  - 2 put her up or let her sleep over
  - 3 oversleeping or sleeping in
  - 4 move out
  - 5 turn in
  - 6 moved in together

#### Unit 59

- **59.1** 1 He said I could bring Jane along if I liked.
  - 2 He asked us over/round after the film. Or He invited us around/round/over after the film.
  - 3 He said he would pop in/into the shop for some biscuits on the way home.
  - 4 He said he loved having people around/round/over.
  - 5 He said I could borrow the CD if his friend brought it round before my party.
- 59.2 1 My parents are always asking after you so I'll tell them your news next time I see them.
  - 2 Do drop in/round some time when you're passing our house and have a cup of tea.
  - 3 My uncle has invited me and a friend out to a smart restaurant to celebrate my birthday.
  - 4 Of course you can bring your brother along when you come to our place tomorrow.
  - 5 I often call round and see my grandmother on my way home from work.
  - 6 I hope I'm not in trouble. The boss has just asked me to pop in to his office (or pop into his office).
- **59.3** 1 a) The speaker has to go upstairs to Bill's office.
  - b) The speaker has to go downstairs to Bill's office.
  - 2 a) The speaker plans to invite Andy and Becky to a meal at his or her home.
    - b) The speaker plans to take Andy and Becky for a meal in a restaurant.
  - 3 a) This visit sounds a little more formal than the visit in (b) and the visitors may ring Peggy first to check that the time is convenient.
    - b) This visit sounds more informal than the one suggested in (a) and Peggy is unlikely to know about it in advance.
  - 4 a) The speaker is going to bring their niece to visit someone and may not stay during
    - b) The speaker's niece is going to accompany the speaker on a visit.

#### 59.4 Possible answers:

Do call round and see me any time you are in the area.

Pop in and have some supper with me one evening.

Please come over and have dinner with me next weekend.

Do come round this weekend. It'd be great to see you.

59.5 stand someone up = fail to meet someone on purpose, especially someone with whom you were starting to have a romantic relationship

tag along = go somewhere with a person, especially when they have not asked you to go with them

run across someone = meet someone you know when you are not expecting to meet them

#### Unit 60

- 60.I 1 top 2 heat 3 thaw 5 hand 4 pour
- **60.2** Suggested answers:
  - 1 Philip: Yes, I think it's gone off.
  - 2 Harry: Yes, we need something that will go (nicely) with it.
  - 3 Jane: OK, I'll put them on.
  - 4 Rickie: Yes, we'll have to make sure it doesn't boil over.
  - 5 Dave: Good idea. It's ages since we last ate out.
- 1 be left over; noun: leftovers (Note that this noun is always plural.) 60.3 take away; noun: takeaway top up; noun: top-up
  - 2 hand round
  - 3 live on or live off
- 2 live on or live off 60.4 1 leftovers 3 hand round or pass round 4 top-up 5 take it away 6 takeaway 7 was left over
- 60.5 You can separate the verb and particle in the following sentences:
  - 1 Would you hand the peanuts round, please?
  - 3 Don't forget to thaw the gateau out.

- 61.1 1 to cloud over 4 warmed up
  - 2 cool down 5 clears up
  - 3 has picked up or is picking up 6 brightens up or clears up
- 61.2 1 We were snowed in. We couldn't even open the front door.
  - 2 We were flooded out. All our carpets were ruined.
  - 3 The rain didn't let up. We ate our picnic in the car.
  - 4 It cleared up later on. We went for a walk in the evening.
  - 5 A strong wind picked up. Some trees got blown down.
  - 6 The match was rained off. The teams were very disappointed.
- 61.3 1 downpour
  - 2 let up or clear up or brighten up
  - 3 flooded out
  - 4 had blown over

- 5 were rained off
- 6 brightens up or clears up
- 7 cool down
- 8 warm up

- 61.4 1 more cheerful
  - 2 angry
  - 3 finish
  - 4 better
  - 5 more enjoyable
  - 6 worried

5 touch

- 62.1 1 Jack set off last Sunday. Or Jack set out last Sunday.
  - 2 Jill got on the plane in Dubai.
  - 3 My journey started off in a very exciting way.

10 get

62.2 1 start or set 6 gets 7 check 2 standby 3 takes 8 stop 4 get 9 stop

6	2	.3	
---	---	----	--

phrasal verb	noun/adjective form	example	
touch down touchdown		The plane burst into flames on touchdown	
check in check-in		There was a long queue at the check-in.	
get away getaway		Police are trying to trace the getaway car.	
take off take-off Please fasten		Please fasten your seatbelts for take-off	
stop over stopover		We had a stopover in New York.	

I set off for Waterloo Station at 11 a.m. and there I got on the midday Eurostar train to Paris. It pulled out exactly on time and soon we were in the Channel Tunnel. After a couple of hours we pulled in at Paris Gare du Nord station. Next day I checked out of my hotel and flew back. We touched down at Heathrow Airport at 11 a.m.

#### Unit 63

- 63.1 1 pull up or pull over
- 3 drew up or pulled up or pulled in
- 2 pick you up, drop you off
- 4 pulled up or drew up

# 63.2

words relating to moving and stopping the car	words relating to accidents and traffic problems	words relating to transporting other people		
draw up	knock down	drop off		
pull up	run over	pick up		
pull over	pile-up			
pull in	railback			
pull into				
pull out				

- 63.3 1 up 2 back 3 in 4 over 5 out 6 off
- 63.4 1 e 2 d 3 b 4 f 5 a 6 c

- 64.1 1 turn or switch 2 plug 3 turn or switch 4 charge 5 Turn
- 64.2 Suggested answers:
  - 1 I'll load up the dishwasher for you. Or I'll load the dishwasher up for you.
  - 2 Play back that tape you recorded at the concert. Or Play that tape you recorded at the concert back.
  - 3 The mechanic pumped up the tyres while he was servicing the car. Or The mechanic pumped the tyres up while he was servicing the car.
  - 4 The security alarm went off when we opened the door to the office.
  - 5 I was driving up a steep hill when the engine cut out.
  - 6 Could you run off thirty copies of this report for the meeting, please? Or Could you run thirty copies of this report off for the meeting, please?
  - 7 We've just bought a breadmaking machine. All you do is measure out all the ingredients, put them in the machine and switch it on. Or All you do is measure all the ingredients out, put them in the machine and switch it on.
  - 8 Don't switch on the vacuum cleaner until it is plugged in.
- 64.3 1 I couldn't hear what they were saying on the radio so I turned it up. Note that you would turn it down if it was too loud rather than too quiet.
  - 2 What must we do when the alarm bell goes off?
  - 3 My mobile is low. Can I charge it up here?
  - 4 Could you help me, please, by loading up the washing machine?

    Note that a washing machine *fills up* with water, but it does this automatically.
  - 5 It's very dark in here do switch on the light.
    Note that you would switch off the light if the room was very light rather than very dark.
  - 6 Mel asked him to measure out 250 grams of butter.

# Unit 65

**65.1** Suggested answers:

log on

key in your report

back up your work (Note that some people may choose to print out their work before they back it up.)

print out your work

log off

- 65.2 1 zoom in, zoom out 4 logged in/on
  - 2 picking up 5 back-up 3 scroll down 6 printout
- 65.3 1 c 2 c 3 d 4 a 5 b 6 c
- 65.4 You'd click on these icons when you want to:

  1 zoom in or zoom out of a document
  - 2 scroll across/up/down a document
  - 3 print out a document
  - 4 pick up e-mails

- **66.1** 1 False. Although to flare up can be used of fires or violence, here the context clearly means it is violence which has suddenly occurred.
  - 2 True
  - 3 True
  - 4 False. It has not been published, but people have discovered what the report contains because someone has unofficially or illegally released the information.
  - 5 False. They have withdrawn from the trade agreement.
  - 6 True

### 66.2

phrasal verb	noun form
crack down	crackdown
break out (from prison)	breakout
break out (war, disease, etc.)	outbreak
break through	breakthrough
hide away	hideaway
flare up	flare-up
look out for	lookout*

\*A lookout can be either a person or a place.

There is also a noun outlook, which means prospect or view, but it comes from a different sense of the phrasal verb look out, namely have a view over, e.g.

Our hotel room looked out over a park.

The outlook for the economy is very bad.

# **66.3** Suggested answers:

- 1 Hey did you read that? A bomb went off in the capital last night, injuring six people.
- 2 Did you read that? Riots have broken out between the Northern tribes and the Southern League.
- 3 Did you see that? The Phrasalian rebels are beginning to step up their attacks on military bases.
  - Or The Phrasalian rebels are beginning to step their attacks on military bases up. (Note that this sounds more awkward than the first version.)
- 4 Have you heard? The teachers' union has broken off talks with local government officials.
  - Or The teachers' union has broken talks off with local government officials. (Note that this sounds more awkward than the first version.)
- 5 The police are advising villagers to look out for anything suspicious.
- 6 Wow! There's been a breakout at (or from) Gilston High Security Prison.

### Unit 67

- 67.1 1 An old man was beaten up in his own home yesterday.
  - 2 The thieves walked off with some priceless antique silver.
  - 3 The burglars broke into the house by a side window.
  - 4 The prisoner managed to break out in broad daylight,
  - 5 The thieves held up a local bank yesterday.

- 67.2 1 The man is holding up a bank or shop.
  - 2 The judge is letting a criminal off. Or The judge is letting off a criminal.
  - 3 He's tipping off the police. Or He's tipping the police off.
  - 4 She's leaning on someone. Or She's putting someone up to something.
- 67.3 1 mixed up
  - 2 putting him up
  - 3 lean on or be leaning on
  - 4 taken in or led on
  - 5 let him off
- 67.4 1 c 2 b 3 d 4 a

- 1 stood, clamp 68.1
  - 2 broke, entered
  - 3 carried, bring
  - 4 standing, sticking
- 68.2 1 Politician: No, we are determined to go ahead with our proposals.
  - 2 Politician: We intend to do away with out-of-date committees and to modernise the
    - whole committee structure to make it more efficient.
  - 3 Politician: No. I do not, I and her many supporters are determined to stick by her in the face of these appalling and unfair attacks from the press.
  - 4 Politician: Yes, the party fully backs Mr Carson up.
- 1 The People's Purple Party believes that the monarchy should be done away with. 68.3
  - 2 The PPP aims to bring in legislation banning fox hunting. Or The PPP aims to bring legislation in banning fox hunting.
  - 3 The PPP is determined to clamp down on smoking in public places.
  - 4 The leader of the PPP says nothing will stop the Party carrying out its aims. Or The leader of the PPP says nothing will stop the Party carrying its aims out.
  - 5 He swears he will do all he can to stand up for the principles the PPP supports.
  - 6 The PPP has got the go-ahead to hold a demonstration next week.

# Unit 69

- 1 Would you like to wash up? Sure. Where's the restroom?
  - 2 What's wrong with the TV? Dunno. I can't figure out why it's not working.
  - 3 Why is she so upset? Her parents have just bawled her out.
  - 4 Where will you buy your new TV? Dunno, I'll call around a few places.
  - 5 Where's Jo gone? To visit with some friends.
  - 6 Why d'you think you failed the test? Because I goofed off so much.
- 69.2 1 shot through 2 got into 3 belt into 4 barrack for
- **69.3** 1 I expect your grandmother will want to wash up when she arrives.
  - 2 The teacher got into me for doing such a bad essay. 3 Will lost his job for goofing off to go to a concert.
  - 4 Suzie belted into the spring cleaning and the house was soon transformed.
  - 5 Could you call around to find the cheapest place to rent a car?
  - 6 I can't figure out why he's behaving so oddly.
  - 7 He shot through last month and the police have been looking for him ever since.

- 8 I'll be ready soon. Wait up!
- 9 I'm visiting with my aunt at the weekend. Would you like to come too?

- 70.1 1 bliss 5 bigged 2 out 6 cashback
  - 3 sexing 7 out 4 buy 8 burnout
- 70.2 Suggested answers:
  - 1 The e-mail will probably bounce back (to you).
  - 2 veg out
  - 3 chill out
  - 4 You might feel stressed-out and you might suffer from burnout.
  - 5 cashback
  - 6 big
  - 7 bliss out
  - 8 a dress-down day
  - 9 You could text them back.
  - 10 veg out, chill out, bliss out
  - 11 bounce back, text back, cashback
  - 12 stressed-out, burnout

#### 70.3 Suggested answers:

- 1 Yes, it'll be great to just veg out! Or Yes, it'll be great to just chill out.
- 2 Sure, I'll text you back.
- 3 I don't buy into it at all. Or It might help us to chill out more.
- 4 No, I'm (all) partied out.
- 5 I did but it bounced back to me.
- 6 I know! She should learn to chill out. Or Yes, she's far too stressed-out.
- 7 It's a dress-down day!
- 8 Oh, they really bigged it up.

# Mini dictionary

The numbers in the Mini dictionary are Unit numbers not page numbers.

- allow for sth to consider or include something when you are making plans or judging a situation 37
- answer (sb) back if someone, especially a child, answers back, or answers someone back, they reply rudely to someone they should be polite to 20
- ask after sb/sth to ask for information about someone, especially about their health 59
- ask out sb or ask sb out to invite someone to come with you to a place such as the cinema or a restaurant, especially as a way of starting a romantic relationship 1, 52
- ask sb over/round to invite someone to come to your house 1, 59
- back down to admit that you are wrong or that you have been defeated, often because you are forced to 38
- back off to stop being involved in a situation, especially in order to allow other people to deal with it themselves 34
- back onto sth if a building backs onto something, its back faces that thing 24
- back out to decide not to do something that you were going to do or that you had agreed to do
- back up (sth) or back (sth) up to make a copy of computer information so that you do not lose
- back up sb or back sb up to say that someone is telling the truth 38
- back up sb or back sb up to support or help someone 68
- **back-up** *n* an extra copy of computer information
- bang into sth to knock against something, usually by accident 21
- bank on sth to depend on something happening
- bargain for/on sth to expect something to happen and be prepared for it 37
- barrack for sb informal, American & Australian to shout encouragement to the players in a football team 69
- bash sth/sb about to treat something or someone in a rough way 18
- bawl out sb or bawl sb out informal, American & Australian to tell someone angrily that something they have done is wrong 69
- be booked up if an event, person, or place is booked up, they have no space or time available for someone 33
- be caught up in sth to be involved in a situation, often when you do not want to be 34
- be cut off to be a long way from other places and people 24

- be dying for sth informal to want something very much, especially food or drink 19
- be getting at sth informal if you ask someone what they are getting at, you are asking them what they mean, usually because they have expressed something indirectly 7
- be hung up informal to be very worried about something and spend a lot of time thinking about it 51
- be left over if an amount of money or food is left over, it remains when the rest has been used or eaten 60
- be left over to exist from an earlier time 23 be littered with sth if something is littered with a particular type of thing, it has or contains a lot of that thing 32
- be mixed up in sth informal to be involved in an illegal or unpleasant activity 67
- be partied out informal to have had enough of parties because you have been to so many 70
- be playing at sth if you ask what someone is playing at, you ask what they are doing, in a way which shows that you are surprised and angry 40
- be pressed for sth to have very little or not enough of something, especially time or money
- be put out to be annoyed, often because of something that someone has done or said to you
- be rained off if a sport or other outside activity is rained off, it cannot start or continue because it is raining 61
- be set against sth/doing sth to be opposed to doing or having something 37
- be snowed in if a person or place is snowed in, there is so much snow that it is impossible to travel anywhere or leave that place 61
- be snowed under informal to have so much work that you have problems dealing with it 46
- be spread out if people or things are spread out, they are in different parts of a large area and are not close together 24
- be taken up with sth to be very busy doing something 12
- be thrown together if people are thrown together in a situation, that situation causes them to meet each other and to get to know each other 34
- be tied up informal to be busy so that you are unable to see or speak to anyone else or go anywhere 46
- be tucked away to be in a quiet or hidden place which not many people see or go to 24
- beat down sb/sth or beat sb/sth down to force someone to reduce the price of something 48

beat up sb or beat sb up to hurt someone badly by hitting or kicking them again and again 67

become of sb/sth if you ask what became of someone or something, you want to know where they are and what happened to them 55

belt into sth Australian to begin to do something quickly and with a lot of effort 69

Belt up! informal, British & Australian something that you say angrily to someone in order to tell them to be quiet 41

bend over backwards to do sth to try extremely hard to do something to help or please someone 30

big up sb/sth informal to talk a lot about how excellent someone or something is, sometimes praising them more than is deserved 70

bite back to do something bad to someone because they have done something bad to you 20

bite back sth or back sth back to stop yourself from saying something that shows your real feelings or thoughts 20

blend in or blend into sth if something or someone blends in, they look or seem the same as the things or people around them and so you do not notice them 32

bliss (sb) out informal to become or make someone become totally happy and relaxed 70

blocked-up adj filled with something so that nothing can pass through [used of a narrow space] 4, 56

blow down (sth) or blow (sth) down if something blows down, or if the wind blows something down, that thing falls to the ground because the wind blows it 17

**blow over** if a storm blows over, it becomes less strong and then ends 61

blow over if an unpleasant situation [e.g. argument] blows over, it gradually becomes less important and is then forgotten 26

blow up (sth/sb) or blow (sth/sb) up to destroy something or kill someone with a bomb, or to be destroyed or killed with a bomb 5

blow up sth or blow sth up to fill something [e.g. balloon, tyre] with air 5, 29

blow up informal to suddenly become very angry

boil over if a liquid that is being heated boils over, it flows over the side of the pan 17, 60

booked up if an event, person, or place is booked up, they have no space or time available for someone 33

bottle out informal, British to suddenly decide not to do something because you are afraid 36

bottle up sth or bottle sth up informal to not allow yourself to show or talk about your feelings, especially feelings of anger and sadness 51 bounce back if an e-mail bounces back, it comes back to you because the address is wrong or there is a computer problem 70

branch out to start to do something different from what you usually do, especially in your job 46

break away to stop being part of a group because you disagree with them or because you do not want to be controlled by them 68

break down if a machine or vehicle breaks down, it stops working 1, 2

break down to be unable to control your feelings and to start to cry 51

break down to become mentally or physically ill because of an unpleasant experience 56

break in to get into a building or car by using force, usually in order to steal something 4

break into sth to get into a building or car by using force, usually in order to steal something

break-in n when someone forces their way into a building or car, usually to steal something 4, 67

break off (sth) or break (sth) off to stop doing something 28

break off (sth) or break (sth) off if discussions between two groups of people break off, or if someone breaks them off, they end suddenly, before they have been completed 66

break off to suddenly stop speaking 15 break off sth or break sth off to end a relationship 53

break off with sb to end a romantic relationship with someone 53

break out if something dangerous and unpleasant [e.g. war, disease, fire] breaks out, it suddenly starts 66 outbreak n when something unpleasant or difficult to control starts, such as war or disease 66

break out to escape from prison 67

breakout n an escape 66, 67

break through sth to succeed in dealing with a problem or difficult situation 66

breakthrough n an important discovery or success that helps you achieve or deal with something 4, 66

break up if a marriage breaks up, or if two people who have a romantic relationship break up, their marriage or relationship ends 53

break-up n the act or event of breaking up 53
break up if schools or universities, or the people who study or work in them break up, classes end and the holidays start 43

break up if someone who is talking on a mobile phone is breaking up, their voice cannot be heard 50

**brighten up** if the weather brightens up, the sky becomes lighter and the sun starts to shine 61 **brighten up** to suddenly look or feel happier 51

- brighten up sth or brighten sth up to make somewhere more attractive, often by adding colours 24
- bring about sth or bring sth about to make something happen 25
- bring along sb/sth or bring sb/sth along to bring someone or something somewhere 59
- bring around/round sb/sth or bring sb/sth around/round to bring someone or something somewhere, especially to someone's house 59
- bring sb around/round to persuade someone to agree with you or to do what you want them to do 39
- bring back sth or bring sth back to make someone remember or think about something from the past 1, 25
- bring down sb or bring sb down to cause people in positions of power [e.g. government, president] to lose their position 66
- bring forward sth or bring sth forward to change the date or time of an event so that it happens earlier than planned 22
- bring in sth or bring sth in if a government or organisation brings in something new [e.g. law, rule], they make it exist for the first time 68
- bring off sth or bring sth off to succeed in doing something difficult 27
- bring round/around sb/sth or bring sb/sth round/around see bring around/round
- bring up sb or bring sb up to look after a child and educate them until they are old enough to look after themselves 55
- bring up sth or bring sth up to start to talk about a particular subject 1, 31
- brush aside sb/sth or brush sb/sth aside to refuse to listen to what someone says, or to refuse to think about something seriously 2, 39
- brush up (on) sth to practise and improve your skills or your knowledge of something that you learned in the past but have partly forgotten 43
- bubble over to be very excited and enthusiastic
- build on sth to use a success or achievement as a base from which to achieve more success 27
- bump into sb to meet someone you know when you had not planned to meet them 21
- burn off sth or burn sth off to use or get rid of energy or something which provides energy [e.g. calories, fat], by doing a lot of physical exercise 57
- burnout n illness or extreme tiredness because you have been working too hard 70
- burst into sth to suddenly start to make a noise, especially to start crying, laughing or singing 21
- butt in to interrupt a conversation or discussion or someone who is talking 31
- buy into sth informal to completely believe in a set of ideas 70

- bygone adj from the past 23
- bystander n a person who sees something happening but who is not involved 4
- call around American to telephone several people, often in order to find out information
- call back to go back to a place in order to visit someone or collect something that you were unable to visit or collect earlier 24
- call back (sb) or call (sb) back to telephone someone for the second time or to telephone someone who rang you earlier 20, 50
- call for sth to need or deserve a particular action or quality 36
- call for sth to say that you think a particular thing should be done, usually in order to change or improve a situation 39
- call for sb to visit a place in order to collect someone 19
- call in British & American to visit a place or person for a short time, usually while you are going somewhere else 16
- call off sth or call sth off to decide that a planned event or activity will not happen, especially because it is no longer possible or useful 1, 2, 33
- call off sth or call sth off to decide to stop an activity that has already started 5, 28
- call round British & American to visit someone who lives near to you for a short time 59
- calm down (sb) or calm (sb) down to stop feeling upset, angry, or excited, or to make someone stop feeling this way 51
- calm down (sth) or calm (sth) down if a situation calms down, or if you calm it down, it becomes more peaceful 34
- can't/couldn't get over sth if someone can't get over something, they are very surprised or shocked that something has happened or that something is true 7
- care for sb to look after someone who is too young, too old, or too ill to look after themselves 56
- carried away to become so excited about something that you do not control what you say or do and you forget about everything else 51
- carry on to continue doing something 5.5 carry out sth or carry sth out to do or complete something, especially something important 45
- carry out sth or carry sth out if you carry out something that you said you would do, or that you have been told to do [e.g. instructions, order, threat], you do it 68
- cashback n money from your bank account that you can get from a shop when you buy goods with a debit card 70
- catch on to become popular 27

- catch up to reach someone in front of you by going faster than them 27
- catch up to reach the same quality or standard as someone or something else 42
- catch up on/with sth to do something you did not have time to do earlier 46
- catch up with sb to meet someone you know, after not seeing them for a period of time 19
- caught up in sth to be involved in a situation, often when you do not want to be 34
- changeover n a complete change from one system or method to another 4, 26
- charge up sth or charge sth up if you charge up a piece of electrical equipment, you put electricity into it 50, 64
- chase up sb or chase sb up to ask someone to do something that they said they would do but that they have not done yet 46
- chase up sth or chase sth up to try to get something that belongs to you or that you need, or to try to discover more information about something 2
- chat up sb or chat sb up informal, British & Australian to talk to someone in a way that shows them that you are sexually attracted to them and to try to make them attracted to you
- chat-up n informal a way of talking which suggests you are sexually attracted to someone and want them to be attracted to you 52
- check in to show your ticket at an airport so that you can be told where you are sitting and so that your bags can be put on the aircraft 62
- check-in n the place at an airport where you go to say that you have arrived for your flight 4, 62
- check in or check into sth to arrive at a hotel and say who you are so that you can be given a key for your room 62
- check out to leave a hotel after paying and giving back the key of your room 62
- checkout n the place where you pay for things in a big shop 4
- check over sth/sb or check sth/sb over to examine something or someone to make sure that they are correct, healthy or working properly 17
- check up on sb to discover what someone is doing in order to be certain that they are doing what they should be doing or what they said they would do 35
- cheer up (sb) or cheer (sb) up if someone cheers up, or if someone or something cheers them up, they start to feel happier 51
- chicken out informal to decide not to do something you had planned to do because you are too frightened 37
- chill out informal to relax completely, or not allow things to upset you 70

- chop down sth or chop sth down to cut through a tree or a group of trees so that they fall to the ground 17
- chop up sth or chop sth up to cut something, especially food, into small pieces 13
- clamp down if someone in authority clamps down, they do something in order to stop or limit a particular activity 68
- **clampdown** n a sudden action taken by a government or people in authority to stop or limit a particular activity 68

14

- clear off informal to leave a place quickly 15 clear out sth or clear sth out to make a place tidy by removing things that are unwanted
- clear up (sth) or clear (sth) up to make a place tidy and clean, especially by putting things where they usually belong 5, 13
- clear up if the weather clears up, it improves 61 clock in/on to record the time you arrive at work, usually on a machine with a clock 22
- clock off/out to record the time you leave work, usually on a machine with a clock 22
- clog up (sth) or clog (sth) up if something [e.g. road, pipel clogs up, or if something clogs it up, it becomes blocked and nothing in it is able to move 13
- close down (sth) or close (sth) down if a business or organisation closes down, or if someone or something closes it down, it stops doing business 17
- cloud over if the sky clouds over, it becomes covered with clouds 61
- club together if a group of people club together, they share the cost of something between them
- come about when you say how or why something comes about, especially something which is not planned, you explain how or why it
- come across sth/sb to discover something by chance, or to meet someone by chance 1, 6
- come along to arrive at a place 6 come apart if something comes apart, it
- separates into pieces 6 come around/round to visit someone at their
- house 2, 59 come around/round to become conscious again
- 2, 6 come back to sth to start talking about a
- particular subject again 31 come down to sth if a situation or decision comes down to something, that is the thing that will influence it most 6
- come down with sth to become ill, usually with a disease that is not very serious 56
- come off to happen successfully or as planned 6, 27

Come off it! informal something that you say in order to tell someone that you do not believe them or that you disagree with them 41

Come on! something that you say to someone in order to encourage them to do something you want them to do, especially to hurry up, to try harder, or to tell you something 41

come out if dirt or colour comes out of something, especially clothing or cloth, it disappears or becomes less strong after being in water 6

come out if someone who has been in prison or hospital comes out, they leave 6

come out if something that is published [e.g. book, newspaper], a musical recording [e.g. single, album], or a film comes out, it becomes available for people to buy or see it 14

come out if the truth about something comes out, it becomes known publicly after it has been kept secret 6

come out if results or information come out, they are given to people 6

come over to visit someone at their house 59 come round/around see come around/round come to sth to be a particular total when

amounts or numbers are added together 47

come to sth if you come to a decision or a conclusion, you make a decision about something, or you decide what you think about something 6

come under sth if a piece of information comes under a particular part of a list, book, or collection of things, you can find it in that part 35

come up if a subject [e.g. issue, name] comes up in a conversation, it is discussed or mentioned 6

come up if a job or opportunity comes up, it becomes available 6

come up if a problem or difficult situation comes up, it happens when you do not expect it 6

come up if a question or a subject comes up in an exam, that question is asked or questions about that subject are asked in the exam 43

come up against sth/sb to have to deal with a difficult situation or someone who disagrees with you or tries to stop you doing what you want to

come up with sth to think of or to suggest a plan or idea, a solution to a problem, or an answer to a question 36

cool down (sb/sth) or cool (sb/sth) down to become cooler, or to make someone or something become cooler 57, 61

cool down/off (sb/sth) or cool (sb/sth) down/off to become calmer, or to make someone or something become calmer 51, 61

could do with sth/sb to need or want something or someone 19

I could do without sth informal something you say when something is annoying you or causing problems for you, because your situation at that time makes it difficult for you to deal with it 37

couldn't ask for sb/sth if you say that you couldn't ask for someone or something better, you mean that that person or thing is the best of their kind 19

count on/upon sb to have confidence in someone because you know that they will do what you

cover-up n an attempt to stop people discovering the truth about something bad 4

crack down if someone in authority [e.g. police, government| cracks down, they start treating people much more strictly in order to try to stop them from doing things they should not do 17,

crackdown n when bad or illegal behaviour is dealt with in a very severe way, in order to stop it happening 66

cram in/into if a lot of people or animals cram in or cram into a place, they all go into it even though it is too small for all of them and becomes very full 33

crop up if a problem crops up, it suddenly happens, often when it is not expected 34

crop up if something, especially a word, crops up, it appears, often in something that you read, hear, or see 44

cross out sth or cross sth out to draw a line through something that you have written, usually because it is wrong 42

cut back (sth) or cut (sth) back to reduce the amount of money that is being spent on something 47

cutback n a reduction in the amount of money that is being spent on something 4

cut down sth or cut sth down if you cut down a tree or a bush, you make it fall to the ground by cutting it near the bottom 17

cut down to eat or drink less of a particular thing, usually in order to improve your health

cut down sth or cut sth down to reduce the amount or number of something 28

cut off sb or cut sb off to stop people from continuing a telephone conversation by breaking the telephone connection 50

cut off sb/sth or cut sb/sth off to prevent people from reaching a place or leaving a place 2 cut off to be a long way from other places and

cut out sth or cut sth out to remove something by cutting, especially something made of paper or cloth 2, 14

cut out sth or cut sth out to remove part of a piece of writing 44

cut out if an engine, machine, or piece of equipment cuts out, it suddenly stops working 2, 64

date back to have existed since a particular time 23

dawn on/upon sb if a fact dawns on you, you realise or understand something after a period of time when you did not realise or understand it 36

deal with sth to take action in order to achieve something, or in order to solve a problem 31, 36

deal with sth if something [e.g. book, film, article] deals with a particular subject or idea, it is about that subject or idea 19

depend on/upon sth/sb to trust someone or something and know that they will help you or do what you expect them to do 16

dial out to use a telephone in order to call someone in another building 50

die for sth informal see be dying for sth 19 dip into sth to read small parts of a book or magazine 44

divide up (sth) or divide (sth) up to separate something into smaller parts or groups, or to form smaller parts or groups 13

do away with sth to get rid of something, or to stop using something 1, 68

do up sth or do sth up to fasten something 32 do with - could do with sth/sb to need or want something or someone 19

do without (sth/sb) to manage without something or someone 37 see I could do without sth/sb

downfall n the sudden failure of a person or organisation, or something that causes this 4, 27

downpour n a sudden, heavy fall of rain 61 doze off informal to gradually start to sleep, especially during the day 15

drag on if an unpleasant or difficult situation or process drags on, it continues for too long 23

draw on/upon sth to use information or your knowledge or experience of something to help you do something 35

draw up if a vehicle, or someone in a vehicle, draws up, they arrive somewhere and stop 63

dress up (sb) or dress (sb) up to put on formal or special clothes for a special occasion, or to put them on someone else 2, 32

dress-down adj used about an occasion when you wear less formal clothes than normal 70

drift apart if two friends drift apart, they gradually become less friendly and their relationship ends 53

drink up (sth) or drink (sth) up to completely finish your drink 13

drop around/round informal to make a short visit to someone in their home, usually without arranging it before 59

drop around/round sth or drop sth around/round informal to deliver something, usually something small 59

drop in to make a short visit to someone in their home, usually without arranging it before 59

drop off sb/sth or drop sb/sth off to take someone to a place that they want to go to, or to deliver something to a place, usually in a car, often when you are going somewhere else 63

drop off sth or drop sth off to take someone to a place that they want to go to, or to deliver something to a place, usually in a car, often when you are going somewhere else 1

drop out if a student drops out, they stop going to classes before they have finished their course

dropout n a person who leaves school or college before finishing a course 4

drop round/around see drop around/round dry up if a supply of something dries up, it ends 28

dry up to stop speaking when you are acting or making a speech, especially because you suddenly forget what to say next 31

dying for sth informal to want something very much, especially food or drink 19

eat out to eat a meal in a restaurant, not at home 1,60

eat up sth or eat sth up to eat all the food you have been given 13

e-mail back (sb) or e-mail (sb) back to send a reply to someone by e-mail, usually a reply to an e-mail someone has sent you 20

end up to finally be in a particular place, state, or situation, especially without having planned it

end up doing sth to finally do something, especially without having planned to 55

enter into sth to start to become involved in something, especially a discussion 21 enter into sth if you enter into an agreement,

you officially agree to something 68 face up to sth to accept that a difficult or

unpleasant situation exists 36

fall apart if something falls apart, it breaks or breaks into pieces because it is old or weak 30 fall behind (sth/sb) to fail to develop at the same rate as something else, or to fail to achieve a

standard reached by other people 42

fall down to fall to the ground 29 fall down to fail because of not being satisfactory for a particular purpose 4 downfall n the sudden failure of a person or organisation, or something that causes this 4, 27

fall for sblsth informal to be attracted to someone or something 52

fall for sth to be tricked into believing something that is not true 2, 39

fall out to argue with someone and stop being friendly with them 38, 52

falling-out n informal an argument 52 fall over if someone falls over, they fall to the ground 3, 17

fall through if a plan or agreement falls through, it fails to happen 27

feel for sb to feel sorry for someone because they are very unhappy or in a difficult situation 51

fight back to defend yourself when someone or something attacks you or causes problems for you

fight off sth or fight sth off to try hard to get rid of something unpleasant or unwanted, especially an illness or bad emotions 56

figure out sth or figure sth out American to understand something or someone, or to find the answer to something by thinking carefully 69

fill in sth or fill sth in to write the necessary information on an official document |e.g. form, questionnaire 44

fill in sb or fill sb in to tell someone about the things that have happened while they have not been there, or to give someone the information they need in order to do something 45

fill out sth or fill sth out to write the necessary information on an official document [e.g. form, questionnaire 44

fill up (sth) or fill (sth) up to become full, or to make something become full 26

find out (sth) or find (sth) out to get information about something because you want to know more about it, or to learn a fact or piece of information for the first time 35

finish off sth or finish sth off to complete the last part of something that you are doing 28

finish with sb informal, British & Australian to end a romantic relationship with someone 53

Fire away! informal something that you say in order to tell someone that you are ready for them to start asking you questions, or to start speaking 41

fit in to feel happy in a group of people because you are similar to them 52

fit in sb/sth or fit sb/sth in to find time to do something or see someone 22

fix up sb/sth or fix sb/sth up to provide or arrange something for someone 45

fizzle out to gradually end or disappear, especially in a disappointing way 28

flare up if something [e.g. violence, argument, anger] flares up, it suddenly happens and becomes very serious 66

flick through sth to look briefly at the pages of something [e.g. book, magazine] 20

flip through sth to look briefly at the pages of something [e.g. book, magazine] 20

flood out sb or flood sb out to force someone to leave their home because of floods 61

follow up sth or follow sth up to do something in order to make the effect of an earlier action or thing stronger or more certain 45

fool around to spend time having fun or behaving in a silly way 18

fork out sth or fork sth out informal to pay or give money for something, especially when you do not want to 48

freshen up to quickly wash yourself so that you feel clean 32, 69

get across sth or get sth across to successfully communicate an idea to other people 31

get ahead to be successful in the work that you do 45

get along if two or more people get along, they like each other and are friendly to each other 52

get around/round sth to find a way of dealing with or avoiding a problem 7

get around/round to sth/doing sth to do something that you have intended to do for a long time 7

get at sth see be getting at sth 7

get away to leave a place or person, often when the situation makes it difficult for you to do this

get away to go somewhere to have a holiday, especially because you need to rest 62

getaway adj used to escape something or someone 62

get away with sth/doing sth to succeed in not being criticised or punished for something wrong that you have done 7

get away with sth/doing sth to do something successfully even though it is not the best way of doing it 1, 7

get sth back or get back sth if you get something back, something that you had before is given to you again 47

get back to sb if you get back to someone, you talk to them, usually on the telephone, in order to give them some information that they have asked you for, or because you were not able to speak to them before 50

get behind if you get behind with work or with payments, you have not done as much work or paid as much money as you should by a particular time 7

get by to have just enough money to pay for the things that you need, but nothing more 7

get carried away to become so excited about something that you do not control what you say or do and you forget about everything else 51

get down to sth/doing sth to start doing something seriously and with a lot of your attention and effort 5

get in if a train, plane, or other vehicle gets in at a particular time, that is when it arrives 62

get into sb informal, Australian to criticise someone 69

get mixed up in sth to become involved in an illegal or bad activity 67

get off (sth) to leave a bus, train, aircraft, or boat

get on (sth) to go onto a bus, train, aircraft, or boat 2, 5, 62

get on if two or more people get on, they like each other and are friendly to each other 2, 5, 7

get on to continue doing something, especially work 5. 7

get on to/onto sth to start talking about a subject after discussing something else 31

get out to move out of a vehicle 63

get out of sth/doing sth to avoid doing something that you should do, often by giving an excuse 34

get over sth to begin to feel better after an experience that has made you unhappy 17, 26

get over see can't/couldn't get over sth get sth over with to do and complete something

difficult or unpleasant that must be done 7 get round/around see get around/round

get through to manage to talk to someone on the telephone 1, 50

get through to sb to succeed in making someone understand or believe something 31

get to sb informal to make someone feel upset or angry 38

get together (sb) or get (sb) together if two or more people get together, or if someone gets two or more people together, they meet in order to do something or spend time together 7

get (sb) up to wake up and get out of bed, or to make someone do this 58

getting at sth informal if you ask someone what they are getting at, you are asking them what they mean, usually because they have expressed something indirectly 7

give away sth or give sth away to give something to someone without asking for payment 47

give in to finally agree to what someone wants after a period when you refuse to agree 2, 38

give in to accept that you have been defeated and agree to stop competing or fighting 57

give in sth or give sth in to give a piece of written work or a document to someone for them to read, judge, or deal with 2, 42

give out sth or give sth out to give something to a large number of people 42

give up (sth) or give (sth) up if you give up a habit [e.g. smoking, drinking] or give up something unhealthy [e.g. cigarettes, alcohol], you stop doing it or having it 26

give up sth or give sth up to stop doing a regular activity or a job 28

give up (sth/doing sth) or give (sth) up to stop doing an activity or piece of work before you have completed it, usually because it is too difficult 28

give up to stop trying to think of the answer to a joke or question 35

go about sth/doing sth to start to do something or deal with something 8

go about doing sth if someone goes about doing something for a long time, they spend their time behaving badly or doing something that is unpleasant for other people 8

go against sth/sb to do the opposite of what someone has asked or advised you to do 2

go ahead to start to do something 68

go-ahead n permission for something to start 68 go along with sth/sb to support an idea, or to agree with someone's opinion 8

go back if schools or students go back, the schools are open and the students start going to lessons again after the holidays 43

go back sth informal if people go back a number of years, they have been friends for that many years or since that time 20

go back on sth to not do something that you promised or said you would do 54

go by if time goes by, it passes 23 bygone adj from the past 23

go down to become lower in level 2

go down with sth informal, British to become ill, usually with a disease that is not very serious

go for sth to choose something 8

go for sth to try to get or achieve something 19,

go for sb/sth to like a particular type of thing or person 52

go forward to win one stage of a competition and compete in another stage 57

go in for sth to compete in a competition, or to do an exam 8

go into sth to describe, discuss, or examine something in a detailed way 21

go off to leave a place and go somewhere else 8 go off if food or drink goes off, it is not good to

eat or drink any more because it is too old 8, 60 go off if a warning device [e.g. alarm] goes off, it suddenly makes a loud noise 64

go off if a bomb or gun goes off, it explodes or fires

go on to continue to exist or happen 8

go on to continue doing something 8

go on to happen 8

goings-on n strange or amusing events 4

go on to talk in an annoying way about something for a long time 8

- Go on! informal something that you say to encourage someone to do something 8, 41
- go out if a light goes out, it stops giving light 8
- go out British to lose when you are playing in a sports competition, so that you must stop playing in the competition 57
- go out with sb to have a romantic relationship with someone 52
- go over sth to talk or think about something in order to explain it or make sure that it is correct
- go through sth to experience an unpleasant or difficult situation or event 2, 8
- go through sth to carefully examine the contents of something or a collection of things in order to find something 8
- go through sth to carefully read or discuss every part of something in order to make sure that it is correct or acceptable 17, 20
- go through with sth to do something unpleasant or difficult which you have planned or promised
- go together if two types of thing or people go together, they are usually found with each other
- go together if two pieces of clothing or two types of food go together, they look or taste good when you wear or eat them at the same time 32
- go under if a company or business goes under, it fails financially 49
- go up if an amount, rate, or standard goes up, it rises 26
- go with sth if one thing goes with another, they suit each other or they look or taste good together 19, 60
- go without (sth) to not have something which you usually have 8
- goings-on n strange or amusing events 4 goof off informal, American to avoid doing any work 69
- grow apart if people who are good friends grow apart, they gradually become less friendly, often because they do not have the same interests and opinions any more 53
- grow on sb informal if something or someone grows on you, you like them more and more, although you did not like them at first 51
- grow up to gradually change from being a child to being an adult 55
- hack into sth to get into someone else's computer system without permission in order to look at information or do something illegal 65
- hand down sth or hand sth down to give or teach something to someone who will be alive after you have died 55
- hand in sth or hand sth in to give a piece of written work [e.g. essay] to a teacher 42

- hand out sth or hand sth out to give something to each person in a group of people 42
- handout n a piece of paper that is given to people who go to a talk or class and which has information on it about the subject dealt with in the talk or class 4, 42
- hand over sth or hand sth over to give something to someone else 17
- hand over (sth/sb) or hand (sth/sb) over to give someone else responsibility for or control of something or someone 45
- hand round sth or hand sth round to offer something, especially food or drink, to each person in a group of people 60
- hang about/around/round (swh) informal to spend time somewhere, usually without doing very much 18
- hang on informal to wait, especially for a short time 22
- Hang on! informal something that you say when you are confused or surprised by something and you need to think 41
- hang out informal to spend a lot of time in a particular place, or to spend a lot of time with someone 22
- hang up to end a telephone conversation, often suddenly, by putting the part of the telephone that you speak into back into its usual position
- hang up sth or hang sth up to hang something, especially clothes, on a hook 13
- hang up informal see hung up 51
- hang-up n informal a feeling of embarrassment or fear about something, often when it is not necessary to feel that way 51
- have it out with sb informal to talk to someone about something that they have said or done that has made you angry in order to improve the situation 54
- have sb around/round if you have someone around, they come to your house for a social
- have sb on to persuade someone that something is true when it is not, usually as a joke 39
- have sth on to have an arrangement to do something 37
- have sb over if you have someone over, they come to your house to visit you 59
- head off to start a journey or leave a place 15 heat up sth or heat sth up to make food hot so
- that it can be eaten 60 heat up (sth) or heat (sth) up to become warm
- or hot, or to make something warmer or hotter
- help out (sb) or help (sb) out to help someone, especially by giving them money or by doing work for them 14

help sb off with sth to help someone remove a piece of outer clothing [e.g. coat] 29

help sb on with sth to help someone to put on a piece of clothing 29

hide away to go to a place where other people will not find you 66

hideaway n a place where someone goes to be alone 66

hire out sth or hire sth out British & Australian to allow someone to use something for a short period of time after they have paid you money 49

hit back to criticise or attack someone who has criticised or attacked you 40

hit it off if two or more people hit it off, they like each other and become friendly immediately 52

hold sth against sb to like or respect someone less because they have done something wrong or behaved badly 38

hold down sth or hold sth down to control the level of something [e.g. prices, costs, inflation] and to prevent it from increasing 17

hold off (sth/doing sth) to delay something or doing something 15

hold on to wait for a short time 50

Hold on! something you say to show that you are surprised or confused about something and that you need time to think about it for a short time

hold up sth/sb or hold sth/sb up to delay something or someone 23

hold up sth/sb or hold sth/sb up to steal money from a building [e.g. bank], a person, or a vehicle, by using violence or by threatening to use violence 67

hold-up n a delay 23

hold-up n when someone steals from someone else using violence or the threat of violence 67

hot up informal if an event or situation hots up, it becomes more exciting and there is a lot more activity 34

hung up informal to be very worried about something and spend a lot of time thinking

hurry up to do something more quickly 41 hurry up sb/sth or hurry sb/sth up to make someone do something more quickly, or to make something happen sooner 23

I could do without sth something that you say when something is annoying you or causing problems for you, because your situation at that time makes it difficult for you to deal with it 37

invite along sb or invite sb along to ask someone if they would like to go with you to an event or activity 3

invite around/round sb or invite sb around/round to ask someone to come to your home 3, 59

invite back sb or invite sb back to ask someone to come to your home after you have been out somewhere together 3

invite in sb or invite sb in to ask someone if they would like to come into your house 3

invite out sb or invite sb out to ask someone to go with you to a place, for example a restaurant or the cinema 3, 59

invite over sb or invite sb over to ask someone to come to your home 3, 59

invite up sb or invite sb up to ask someone if they would like to come upstairs 3

join in (sth) to become involved in an activity with other people 57

jot down sth or jot sth down to write something quickly on a piece of paper so that you remember it 44

jumble up sth or jumble sth up to mix things together in an untidy way 13

jump at sth to eagerly accept a chance to do or have something 51

jump out at sb if something jumps out at you, you notice it immediately 36

keep (sb) at sth to continue working hard at something difficult or something which takes a long time, or to make someone continue to work hard 46

keep away (sb/sth) or keep (sb/sth) away to not go somewhere or near something, or to prevent someone or something from going somewhere or near something 21

keep down sth or keep sth down to stop the number, level, or size of something from increasing 17

keep on at sb to talk to someone about something many times, usually because you want to complain about something they have done or not done 54

keep on doing sth to continue to do something, or to do something again and again 2, 16

keep sth from sb to not tell someone about something 54

keep to sth to do what you have promised or planned to do 31

keep up to go at the same speed as someone or something that is moving forward, so that you stay level with them 23

keep up to increase or to make progress at the same speed as something or someone else so that you stay at the same level as them 27

keep up sth or keep sth up to practise a skill that you learned in the past so that you continue to be good at it 43

keep it up to continue to do something, especially to work hard or to do good work 41

key in sth or key sth in to put information into a computer using a keyboard 65

kick-off n the time when a football match begins 57

knock about/around together informal to spend a lot of time with someone, either because they are your friend or because you are having a romantic relationship with them 22

knock down sb or knock sb down to hit someone with a vehicle and injure or kill them 63

knockdown adj very low (in price) 47

knock off (sth) informal to stop working, usually at the end of a day 45

knock off sth or knock sth off (sth) to take a particular amount away from something, especially a price 48

knock out to defeat a person or team in a competition so that they have to stop taking part in it 57

knockout n a competition in which only the winners of each stage play in the next stage, until one person or team is the final winner 57

knock over sth/sb or knock sth/sb over to hit or push something or someone, especially accidentally, so that they fall to the ground or onto their side 17, 30

latch on informal, British & Australian to understand something 35

latch on to/onto sb to spend time with someone, especially when they do not want you with them 22

laugh off sth or laugh sth off to laugh about something unpleasant in order to make it seem less important or serious 15

**launch into sth** to start doing or saying something [e.g. speech, story] in a very enthusiastic way 21

it

lay into sb to attack or criticise someone in an angry way 40, 69

lay off sb or lay sb off to stop employing someone because there is no work for them to do 45

laze about/around to relax and enjoy yourself by doing very little 18

lead on sb or lead sb on to make someone believe something that is not true 67

leak out if secret information leaks out, people who should not know this information find out about it 66

lean on sb informal to try to make someone do what you want by threatening or persuading them 67

leave aside sth or leave sth aside to not discuss or consider a particular subject so that you can discuss a different subject 31

leave behind sth/sb or leave sth/sb behind to leave a place without taking something or someone with you, either because you have forgotten them or because you cannot take them with you 24 leave out sb/sth or leave sb/sth out to not include someone or something 2, 14

leave sb to sth informal to go away from someone so that they do something by themselves or so they can continue what they are doing 45

**left over** if an amount of money or food is left over, it remains when the rest has been used or eaten 4, 60

left over to exist from an earlier time 23

**leftover** *adj* existing from an earlier time 23 **leftovers** *n* food that was prepared for a meal but

not eaten 4, 60 let down sb or let sb down to disappoint someone by failing to do what you agreed to do

or what you were expected to do 53 let off sb or let sb off to not punish someone who has committed a crime or done something

wrong, or to not punish someone severely 67

let on to tell someone about something which was supposed to be a secret 54

let out sb/sth or let sb/sth out to allow a person or animal to leave somewhere, especially by opening a locked or closed door 14

let-out n an excuse or way of avoiding doing something you agreed to do 36

let up informal if bad weather or an unpleasant situation lets up, it stops or improves 5, 61

lie about/around informal to spend time lying down and doing very little 18

lie ahead if an event or situation that will cause problems lies ahead, it will happen in the future

lie behind sth to be the real reason for something 25

lie in British & Australian to stay in bed in the morning later than you usually do 58

**lie-in** n British & Australian when you stay in bed in the morning longer than usual 58

lie in sth to exist or be found in something 36 lift off if a spacecraft or aircraft lifts off, it leaves the ground 15

lift-off n the moment when a spacecraft leaves the ground 15

lighten up to become more relaxed and less serious 70

Lighten up! informal something you say to tell someone to stop being so serious or annoyed 41

listen in to secretly listen to a conversation, especially a telephone conversation 50

Listen up! informal, American something you say to tell people to listen to what you are going to say 69

littered with sth if something is littered with a particular type of thing, it has or contains a lot of that thing 32

live down sth or live sth down to stop feeling embarrassed about something you have done by waiting until people forget about it 53

live for sth/sb to believe that something or someone is the most important thing or person

in your life 19

live off sth/sb to have enough money for the things you need by taking it from a supply of money or from another person 58

live off sth to only eat a particular type of food 60

live on sth to have a particular amount of money in order to buy the things you need 58

live on sth to only eat a particular type of food 60

live through sth to experience a difficult situation or event 20

live up to sth if someone or something lives up to people's expectations or a particular standard, they are as good as they were expected to be 55

liven up (sth) or liven (sth) up to become more interesting and exciting, or to make something become like this 13

load down sb or load sb down to give someone too many things to carry 17

load up (sth) or load (sth) up to put a lot of things into a vehicle or machine 64

lock yourself away to go to a room or building where you can be alone, usually so that you can work 21

lock in sb or lock sb in to prevent someone from leaving a room or building by locking the door

lock out sb or lock sb out to prevent someone from entering a building by locking the door 14

lock yourself out to accidentally prevent yourself from getting into a building or vehicle by leaving the keys inside when you shut the door 14

log in to connect a computer to a system of computers by typing your name, usually so that you can start working 65

log off (sth) to stop a computer being connected to a computer system, usually when you want to stop working 65

log on to connect a computer to a system of computers by typing your name, usually so that you can start working 65

log out to stop a computer being connected to a computer system, usually when you want to stop working 65

look after sb/sth to take care of someone or something by doing what is needed to keep them well or in good condition 1, 9

look ahead to think about what will happen in the future and plan for these events 9

look around/round (swh) to walk through a building or around a place and look at the things in it 18

look around/round to try to find something you want [e.g. job] by asking different people or by looking in different places 9

look at sth to consider a subject carefully in order to make a decision about it 9

look at sth to read something quickly and not very carefully 9

look back to think about or remember something that happened in the past 2

look down on sb/sth to think that someone is less important than you, or to think that something is not good enough quality for you to use 1.9

look for sth/sb to try to find something or someone, either because you have lost them or because you need them 3

look forward to sth/doing sth to feel pleased and excited about something that is going to happen 1, 9

look into sth to discover and examine the facts about a problem or situation 9, 21

look on to watch an activity or event without becoming involved in it 4, 9 onlooker n a person who watches an activity or event without becoming involved in it 4, 9

look out for sb/sth to carefully watch the people or things around you so that you will notice a particular person or thing 9, 66

lookout n a person who is watching for danger

Look out! something you say or shout in order to tell someone that they are in danger 41

look over sth/sb or look sth/sb over to quickly examine something or someone 3, 9, 17

look round/around see look around/round look through sth to read something quickly and not very carefully 9, 17, 20

look up if a situation is looking up, it is improving 1, 9, 26

look up sb or look sb up to visit someone who you have not seen for a long time when you are visiting the place where they live 1, 9

look up sth or look sth up to look at a book or computer in order to find a piece of information 1.9

look up to sb to respect and admire someone 9 lose out to not have an advantage that other people have 14

make for swh to go in the direction of a place 10 make out sth/sb or make sth/sb out to be able to see or hear something or someone, usually with difficulty 2, 10

make out sth or make sth out to understand something, especially the reason why something has happened 10

make out sth or make sth out to write all the necessary information on an official document [e.g. cheque, application, ticket] 44

make out sb or make sb out to understand why someone behaves in the way that they do 1, 10

make up sth or make sth up to say or write something that is not true [e.g. excuse, report, story] in order to deceive someone 10

make up sth or make sth up to invent something [e.g. story, game] 10

make up sth to form the whole of something 10 make-up n the combination of things which form something 10

make up to forgive someone who you have argued with and to become friendly with them again 53

make up for sth to replace something that has been lost, or to provide something good in order to make a bad situation better 10

make it up to sb to do something good for someone who you have done something bad to in the past, or to someone who has done something good for you 10

match up if two pieces of information match up, they are the same and this shows that the information is likely to be correct 35

measure out 5th or measure 5th out to take a small amount of something from a larger amount, first weighing or measuring it in order to make sure that it is the right amount 64

measure up to be good enough 40

meet with sb American to have a meeting with someone in order to discuss or arrange something 69

mess about/around to spend time playing or doing things with no particular purpose 18

mess about/around to behave stupidly or to waste time doing unimportant things 18, 69

mess sb about/around informal to treat someone badly, especially by changing your mind a lot or not doing what you have promised 1, 18

mess up (sth) or mess (sth) up to spoil or damage something, or to do something badly 42

mill about/around (swh) to walk around a particular place or area, usually while waiting for something 18

Mind out! British & American something that you say in order to tell someone to be careful or to warn someone of a danger 41

miss out to not do or get something that you would enjoy or that would be good for you, or to not have something that other people have 53

miss out sb/sth or miss sb/sth out British & American to fail to include someone or something 42

mix up sth/sb or mix sth/sb up to confuse two people or things by thinking that one person or thing is the other person or thing 34

mix-up n a mistake caused by confusion which prevents something from being done or causes something to be done incorrectly 4, 34

mixed up in sth informal to be involved in an illegal or unpleasant activity 67

mouth off informal to talk about a subject as if you know more than everyone else, or to complain a lot about something 54

move (sth) along if a process moves along, or if you move a process along, it develops in a satisfactory way 46

move in to begin living in a new house or area 58 move in together to start living in the same house as someone you are having a romantic relationship with 58

move out to stop living in a particular house 58 move over to change the place where you are sitting or standing so that there is space for someone else to sit or stand 3, 17, 29

move up British & Australian to move slightly so that there is enough space for someone else 29

muck about/around informal to waste time doing silly things 22

muddle through to succeed in doing something even though you have difficulties because you do not really know how to do it 27

muddle up sb/sth or muddle sb/sth up to confuse two people or things in your mind 34

mug up (sth) or mug (sth) up informal, British to quickly try to learn the main facts about a subject, especially before an exam 43

name sb/sth after sb/sth to give someone or something the same name as someone or something else 55

narrow down sth or narrow sth down to make something [e.g. list, choice, option] smaller and clearer by removing the things that are less important 36

note down sth or note sth down to write words or numbers, often so that you do not forget them 17, 44

off-putting adj unattractive or unpleasant 15 **onlooker** n a person who watches an activity or event without becoming involved in it 9

open onto sth if a room, window, or door opens onto a place, it opens in the direction of that place or has a view of it 24

open up (sth) or open (sth) up to start a new shop or business 13

open up to start to talk more about yourself and your feelings 54

opt out to choose not to be part of an activity or arrangement, or to stop being involved with it 37

order sb about/around to tell someone what they should do all the time 18, 31

outbreak n when something unpleasant or difficult to control starts, such as war or disease

outery n a public expression of anger or disapproval 4, 38

- outlet n a shop that is one of many owned by a particular company and that sells the company's goods 49
- outpouring n a strong expression of emotion 54
- outset n the beginning of something 4, 28 outstanding adj extremely good, or of a very high standard 40
- oversleep to sleep longer than you had intended 58
- own up to admit that you have done something wrong, especially something that is not important 54
- pack away sth or pack sth away to put something into a bag or container, or to put something in the place where it is usually kept 21
- packed out adj very full of people 33
- pack up (sth) or pack (sth) up to collect your things together and put them into bags or boxes, especially when you have finished doing something 28
- pair off if two people pair off, they start a romantic relationship 52
- pan out to develop or happen in a particular way
- partied out informal to have had enough of parties because you have been to so many 70 pass away to die 56
- pass by if time or a period of time [e.g. week] passes by, it goes past 23
- pass for sb/sth if someone or something passes for someone or something else, they appear like that person or thing 55
- pass off British & American if an event passes off in a good way, it happens in that way 33
- pass on sth or pass sth on to give something to someone else 16
- pass on sth or pass sth on to tell someone something that someone else has told you 31 pass on to die 56
- pass round sth or pass sth round to offer something to each person in a group of people
- pass out to become unconscious 56
- pay back shisth or pay shisth back to pay someone the money that you owe them 47
- pay back sb or pay sb back to do something unpleasant to someone because they have done something unpleasant to you 25
- pay off sth or pay sth off if you pay off a debt [e.g. loan, mortgage, overdraft], you pay back all the money you owe 47
- pay off if something that you have done to try to achieve something pays off, it is successful 27
- pay up informal to give someone the money that you owe them, especially when you do not want to 47

- pencil in sth/sb or pencil sth/sb in to arrange for something to happen or for someone to do something on a particular date, knowing that the arrangement might be changed later 45
- phase in sth or phase sth in to make a new system, process, or law gradually begin to happen or exist 26
- phase out sth or phase sth out to gradually stop using or supplying something 26
- phone around/round (sb) to telephone several people, often in order to find out information 50, 69
- phone (sb) back to telephone someone for the second time or to telephone someone who rang you earlier 20
- phone up (sb) or phone (sb) up to telephone someone 50
- pick on sb to choose one person from a group of people to criticise or treat unfairly, especially when they are smaller or weaker than you 40
- pick up sth/sb or pick sth/sb up to lift something or someone by using your hands 29
- pick up sth/sb or pick sth/sb up to collect someone who is waiting for you, or to collect something that you have left somewhere or that you have bought 2, 63
- pick-up n when a car, taxi, etc. collects you 48 pickup n small truck with an open back 48
- pick up sth or pick sth up to collect something you have left somewhere 65
- pick up sth or pick sth up to get or buy something when you have gone to a place to do something else 47
- pick up sth or pick sth up to buy something cheaply 48
- pick up sth or pick sth up to learn a new skill or language by practising it rather than being taught it 43
- pick up if something [e.g. business, economy, tradel picks up, it improves or increases after a bad period 26
- pick-up n an increase or improvement 48 pick up if the wind picks up, it becomes stronger
- pick-up n informal when you start talking to someone you do not know because you want to have a sexual relationship with them 48
- pile up (sth) or pile (sth) up if something unpleasant [e.g. work, bills, losses] piles up, or if you pile it up, you get more and more of it 46
- pile-up n an accident involving several cars
- pin down sb or pin sb down to make someone give you exact details or a decision about something 54
- plan ahead to make decisions or plans about something you will do or something that might happen in the future 37

- play back sth or play sth back to listen to sounds or watch pictures that you have just recorded 64
- play down sth or play sth down to try to make people believe that something is not very important, or that it is unlikely to happen 54
- playing at sth if you ask what someone is playing at, you ask what they are doing, in a way which shows that you are surprised and angry 40
- play-off n a game between two teams that have equal points in order to decide which is the winner 57
- play up British & American if someone, especially a child, plays up, they behave badly 42
- play up British & Australian if a machine or part of a machine plays up, it does not work as it should I
- plug in sth or plug sth in or plug sth into sth to connect a piece of electrical equipment to a supply of electricity or to another piece of electrical equipment 64
- point out sb/sth or point sb/sth out to make a person notice someone or something, usually by telling them where they are or by holding up one of your fingers towards them 35
- point out sth or point sth out to tell someone a fact that they did not already know, especially one that is important in the present discussion or situation 3.5
- polish off sth or polish sth off informal to finish something quickly and easily, especially a large amount of food or a piece of work 28
- polish up sth or polish sth up to practise and improve your skills or your knowledge of something that you learned in the past but have partly forgotten 43
- pop in/into informal to go into a place, especially a friend's house, just for a short time 59
- pop out informal to leave the place where you are and go somewhere for a short time 29
- **pour down** to rain heavily 61 **downpour** n a sudden, heavy fall of rain 61
- pour in to arrive or enter somewhere in very large numbers 33
- pour sth into sth to provide a lot of money for something over a long period 49
- pour out sth or pour sth out to fill a glass, cup etc. with a drink 60
- pour out to leave a place in large numbers 33 pour out sth or pour sth out if you pour out your feelings or thoughts, you talk very honestly about what is making you sad 54 outpouring n a strong expression of emotion 54
- press (sb) for sth to try to persuade someone, usually someone in authority, to give you something or to allow something to happen 39

- pressed for sth to have very little or not enough of something, especially time or money 22
- press on to continue doing something in a determined way 22
- print out (sth) or print (sth) out to produce a printed copy of a document that has been written on a computer 65
- **printout** *n* information or a document that is printed from a computer 65
- pull ahead to suddenly get in front of another car or person that was previously driving or running at the same speed as you 57
- pull down sth or pull sth down to destroy a building or other structure because it is not being used or it is not wanted any more 30
- **pull in** if a train pulls in or pulls into a station, it arrives there 62
- pull in or pull into swh if a car pulls in or pulls into a place, it moves to the side of the road or to another place where it can stop 63
- pull off sth or pull sth off to succeed in doing or achieving something difficult 27
- pull out if a train pulls out, it starts to leave a station 62
- **pull out** to drive onto a road, either from another road or from the side of the road where you have stopped 63
- pull out (sth/sb) or pull (sb/sth) out to stop being involved in an activity or agreement 66
- **pull over** to drive a car to the side of the road in order to stop 3, 63
- pull (sb) through to recover from a serious illness, or to help someone to do this 56
- **pull together** to work as a group in order to achieve something 45
- **pull yourself together** to become calm after being so angry or upset that you were unable to behave in a sensible way 51
- pull up if a car pulls up, it stops, often for a short time 63
- pump up sth or pump sth up to fill something with air by using a pump 64
- push in informal, British & American to rudely join a line of people who are waiting for something by moving in front of some of the people who are already there 16
- put across sth or put sth across to explain or express something clearly so that people understand it easily 11, 39
- put sth at sth to roughly calculate that something will cost a particular amount or that something is a particular size or amount 49
- put back sth or put sth back to change the date or time of an event so that it happens later than planned 11, 33
- put back sth or put sth back if you put a watch or clock back, you make it show an earlier time 11

put down (sth) or put (sth) down to land in an aircraft, or to make an aircraft land 11

put down sth or put sth down if you put the phone down, you put the part of the telephone that you speak into back into its usual position after your conversation has ended 50

put down sb or put sb down to make someone feel stupid or unimportant by criticising them 38

put-down n an unkind remark that makes someone seem foolish 4

put forward sth or put sth forward to state an idea or opinion, or to suggest a plan, so that it can be considered or discussed 39

put forward to change the date or time of an event so that it happens earlier than planned 33

put forward sth or put sth forward if you put forward a clock or watch, you make it show a later time 11

put in sth or put sth in to fix new equipment or a new system in the correct place in a room or building 11

put off sth/doing sth or put sth off to decide or arrange to do something at a later time 1, 2, 11,

put off sb or put sb off to tell someone that you cannot see them or do something for them until a later time 11

put off sb or put sb off (sb/sth/doing sth) to make someone not like someone or something, or not want to do something 15 off-putting adj unattractive or unpleasant 15

put on sth or put sth on to put a piece of clothing onto your body 11, 32

put on sth or put sth on to make a device [e.g. light, fire] work by pressing a switch 11

put on sth or put sth on to pretend to have a particular feeling, or to behave in a way which is not real or natural for you 16

put-on adj pretend or not genuine 16

put on sth or put sth on to organise a play, show, or competition 33

put on sth or put sth on to begin to cook food 60 put on sth or put sth on to put something that sounds or pictures are recorded onto [e.g. CD, videol into a machine which makes you able to hear or see the recording 11

put on sb or put sb on (sth) to give someone the telephone so that they can speak to the person who is on it 50

put sb on to/onto sth to tell someone about something or someone that could help them, often something or someone they did not know about before 11

put out sth or put sth out to make a light stop shining by pressing a switch 11

put out sth or put sth out to make something that is burning [e.g. fire, cigarette] stop burning 11,30

put out sth or put sth out to produce information [e.g. statement, warning, press releasel and make it available for everyone to read or hear 2

put out sth or put sth out to injure a part of your body [e.g. back, shoulder] by making a bone move from its usual place 56

put out to be annoyed, often because of something that someone has done or said to

put over sth or put sth over to express an idea clearly so that people understand it 17, 39

put through sb or put sb through to connect a telephone caller to the person they want to speak to 50

put sth to sb to suggest an idea or plan to someone so that they can consider it or discuss it 39

put up sth or put sth up to build a structure [e.g. wall, building, statue] 11

put up sth or put sth up to stick or fasten a piece of paper [e.g. notice, poster] to a wall so that it can be seen 11

put up sth or put sth up to open something that is folded or rolled up [e.g. tent, umbrella] so that it is ready to be used 11

put up sb or put sb up to let someone stay in your home for a short period 58

put sb up to sth to encourage someone to do something stupid or wrong 67

put up with sth/sb to accept unpleasant behaviour or an unpleasant situation, even though you do not like it 1, 11, 19

rained off if a sport or other outside activity is rained off, it cannot start or continue because it is raining 61

reach down sth or reach sth down to get something that is above your head by reaching with your hand 29

reach out (sth) or reach (sth) out to stretch your arm in front of your body, usually in order to get or touch something 29

read sth into sth to believe that an action, remark, or situation has a particular importance or meaning, often when this is not true 21

read out sth or read sth out to read something and say the words aloud so that other people can hear 44

read over/through sth or read sth over/through to read something from the beginning to the end in order to find any mistakes or to understand it better 3, 17

read through to read something from the beginning to the end in order to find any mistakes or to understand it better 17

read up on sth to read a lot about a particular subject in order to learn about it 44

rely on/upon sb/sth to trust someone or something to do what you need them to do 16

- revolve around/round sth/sb if an activity or conversation revolves around something or someone, that thing or person is the main reason for the activity, or the main subject of the conversation 34
- ring (sb) back to telephone someone for the second time, or to telephone someone who rang you earlier 1, 20, 50
- ring in British & Australian to telephone someone at your place of work, usually to explain why you are not there 50
- ring off British & Australian to end a telephone call by putting down the part of the telephone that you speak into 50
- rip off sb or rip sb off informal to cheat someone by making them pay too much money for something 4, 48
- rip-off n informal something that costs far too much money 4, 48
- rise above sth to not allow something bad that is happening or being done to you to upset you or to affect your behaviour 34
- root for sb informal to show support for someone in a competition, or to hope that someone will succeed in doing something difficult 19

3t

16

an

- root out sth/sb or root sth/sb out to find and get rid of the thing or person that is causing a problem 30
- rope in sb or rope sb in informal to persuade someone to help you with something, especially when they do not want to 39
- rub in sth or rub sth in to put a substance [e.g. ointment] onto the surface of something and to rub it so that it goes into the surface 16
- rub sth in informal to talk to someone about something which you know they want to forget because they feel bad about it 40
- rub out sth or rub sth out to remove writing from something by rubbing it with a piece of rubber or with a cloth 42
- rule out sb/sth or rule sb/sth out to decide that something or someone is not suitable for a particular purpose, or to decide that something is impossible 25, 36
- run across sb to meet someone you know when you are not expecting to meet them 59
- run away to secretly leave a place because you are unhappy there 21
- run sth by sb informal to repeat something, or to tell someone about something, so that they can give their opinion of it or hear it again 37
- run down sb/sth or run sb/sth down informal to criticise someone or something, often unfairly 40
- rundown adj in poor condition or shabby 32 run into sth to accidentally hit something while you are driving a vehicle 63

- run into sb to meet someone that you know when you did not expect to meet them 21
- run into sth if the amount or cost of something runs into thousands, millions etc., it reaches that level 49
- run off sth or run sth off to print several copies of something 64
- run off sth or run sth off to quickly and easily write something that is usually difficult to write [e.g. poem, speech] 15
- run off with sb to secretly leave a place with someone in order to live with them or marry them, especially when other people think this is wrong 53
- run on to continue for longer than expected 23 run out to use all of something so that there is none left 14
- run out if a document or official agreement runs out, the period of time it lasts for comes to an end 22
- run over sb/sth or run sb/sth over to hit someone or something with a vehicle and drive over them, injuring or killing them 63
- run through sth to repeat something in order to practise it or to make sure that it is correct 31
- run-through n a practice or rehearsal 4, 31 run to sth to reach a particular amount, usually a large amount 49
- run up against sth if you run up against problems or difficulties, you begin to experience them 34
- run up sth or run sth up if you run up a debt [e.g. bill, deficit], you do things which cause you to owe a large amount of money 47, 48
- save up (sth) or save (sth) up to keep money so that you can buy something with it in the future 47
- scare away sb/sth or scare sb/sth away to make a person or animal so frightened that they go away 21
- scrape through (sth) to manage with a lot of difficulty to succeed in something [e.g. exam] 43
- screw up sth or screw sth up to twist and crush paper or material with your hands 30
- screw up (sth) or screw (sth) up informal to make a mistake, or to damage or spoil something 40
- screwed-up adj informal unhappy and anxious because of bad experiences 40
- scribble down sth or scribble sth down to write something very quickly on a piece of paper 44
- scroll across/down/up (sth) to move text or other information across/down/up a computer screen in order to view a different part of it 65
- see about sth to deal with something, or to arrange for something to be done 36

see sb about/around to see someone in the places you usually see them 18

see off sb or see sb off to go to the place that someone is leaving from in order to say goodbye

see out sb or see sb out to go with someone to the door of a room or building when they are

see through sb/sth if you see through someone who is trying to deceive you, or if you see through someone's behaviour, you realise what they are really like and what they are trying to do 20

see sb through (sth) to help or support someone during a difficult period in their life 30

see to sth/sb to deal with something that needs doing or to help someone who needs your help 2, 30

sell off sth or sell sth off to sell something at a low price because you do not want it or because you need some money 48

sell off sth or sell sth off to sell all or part of a

sell-off n a sale of all or part of a business 48 sell out if a shop sells out, it has no more of a particular product available to buy 48

sell-out n when all the tickets for an event have been sold 48

sell up (sth) or sell (sth) up to sell your house or business in order to go somewhere else or do something else 49

send away for sth to write to an organisation to ask them to send you something 21

send back sth or send sth back to return something to the company you bought it from because it is unsuitable or damaged 20

send for sb to send someone a message asking them to come to see you 19

send off sth or send sth off to send a letter, document, or parcel by post 1, 15

send off sb or send sb off British & Australian to order a sports player to leave the playing area during a game because they have done something wrong 57

send up sb/sth or send sb/sth up informal to make someone or something seem stupid by copying them in a funny way 33

set about sth/doing sth to start doing something, especially something that uses a lot of time or energy 28

set against sth/doing sth to be opposed to doing or having something 37

set apart sb/sth or set sb/sth apart if a quality sets someone or something apart, it makes them different from and usually better than others of the same type 32

set aside sth or set sth aside to use something, especially time or money, for one purpose and no other purpose 47

setback n a problem that makes something happen later or more slowly than it should 30

set off to start a journey 62

set off sth or set sth off to cause a loud noise or explosion [e.g. bomb, firework, alarm] to begin or happen 25

set off sth or set sth off to cause a series of events or a lot of activity, often without intending to do this 25

set out to start a journey 28, 62

set out to start an activity, especially when you have already decided what you want to achieve 4 outset n the beginning of something 4, 28

set out sth or set sth out to give all the details of something, or to explain something clearly, especially in writing 44

set sb off (doing sth) to make someone start to laugh, cry, or talk about something that they often talk about 25

set up sth or set sth up to start a company or organisation 13, 49

set-up n the way in which things are organised or arranged 13, 49

settle down to start living in a place where you intend to stay for a long time, usually with the same partner, especially after a period in which you have travelled a lot or changed partners 53

settle for sth to accept something, often something that is not exactly what you want, or is not the best 53

settle up to pay someone the money that you owe them 47

sex up sth or sex sth up to make something more exciting than it really is 70

shake off sth or shake sth off to get rid of an illness or something that is causing you problems

shoot through informal, Australian to leave a place suddenly and often secretly, especially to avoid something 69

shoot up if the number, amount, or rate of something shoots up, it increases very quickly

shop around to compare the price and quality of the same item or service from different shops or companies before deciding which one to buy 48

show sb around/round (swh) to go with someone to a place that they have not visited before and show them the interesting parts 18

show off to try to make people admire your abilities or achievements in a way which other people find annoying 40

**show-off** n someone who tries to make people admire them in a way other people find annoying 4, 40

show out sb or show sb out to lead a visitor who is leaving to the door of a room or building 14

show up to arrive, especially at a place where people are expecting you 13

shut down (sth) or shut (sth) down if a factory or business shuts down, or if someone shuts it down, it closes and stops working 17

shut down (sth) or shut (sth) down if a factory or business shuts down, or if someone shuts it down, it closes and stops working 17

shut (sb) up to stop talking or making a noise, or to make someone do this 54

sign up to arrange to take part in an activity 43 sink in if a fact or idea, especially a surprising or unpleasant one, sinks in, you gradually start to believe it or realise what effect it will have on you 16

sit about/around (swh) to spend time sitting down and doing very little 18

skimp on sth to not spend enough time or money on something, or not use enough of something 48

slave away to work very hard with little or no rest 46

sleep in to sleep longer in the morning than you normally do 58

sleep on sth if someone sleeps on a decision or problem, they wait until the next day before they decide what to do about it 37

sleep over informal to sleep in someone else's home for a night 58

sleepover n a party at which several young people sleep at a friend's house for a night 58

sleep through sth if someone sleeps through a noise or an activity, the noise or activity does not wake them 20

slip off to leave a place quietly so that other people do not notice you going 15

slip out if a piece of information slips out while you are talking to someone, you tell it to them without intending to 35

slip out to leave a place quietly so that other people do not notice you going 35

slip up informal to make a mistake 5 slow down to become less physically active than

you were before 56 slow down (sb/sth) or slow (sb/sth) down to become slower, or to make something or

someone slower 29
slow up (sth/sb) or slow (sth/sb) up to become
slower, or to make something or someone slower

snap up sth or snap sth up to buy or get something quickly because it is very cheap or because it is exactly what you want 48

snowed in if a person or place is snowed in, there is so much snow that it is impossible to travel anywhere or leave that place 61

snowed under informal to have so much work that you have problems dealing with it 46 sort out sth or sort sth out to arrange or organise things which are untidy 14

sort out sth or sort sth out to make a decision about something by discussing it with someone else or by considering it carefully 1, 36

sort yourself out informal, British & Australian to spend time dealing with your personal problems or organising your things 36

spark off sth or spark sth off if something sparks off an activity [e.g. fighting, violence] or a state, it causes it to suddenly happen or exist 25

speak out to publicly express your opinions, especially in order to criticise or oppose someone or something 38

speak up to begin to speak more loudly 31, 50 speak up to publicly express your opinions about something or someone, especially in order to support them 31

spell out sth or spell sth out to explain something in detail and in a clear way 31

spin-off n a product that develops from another more important product 49

Spit it out! informal something you say to encourage someone to tell you something which they do not want to tell you 41

splash out informal to spend a lot of money on something which is very pleasant but which you do not need 48

split up if two people who are married or who have a romantic relationship split up, they end their marriage or relationship 53

spread out if a group of people spread out, they move away from each other so that there is a wide space between them 14

spread out sth or spread sth out to open something that is folded [e.g. map, towel] and put it down flat on a surface 42

spread out if people or things are spread out, they are in different parts of a large area and are not close together 24

spring from sth to be caused by something 25 squeeze in sth/sb or squeeze sth/sb in to manage to do something or see someone when you are very busy and do not have much time available 46

stamp out sth or stamp sth out to get rid of something that is considered wrong or harmful 30

stand about/around/round to spend time standing in a place waiting for someone or doing very little 18

stand by sb to continue to support or help someone when they are in a difficult situation 68

standby n a cheap ticket for a flight or performance which is sold just before the flight or performance if there are any seats available 62 stand down British & Australian to leave an important job or official position so that someone else can do it instead 45

stand for sth if a letter stands for a word or name, it is the first letter of that word or name

and it is used to represent it 19

stand for sth British & Australian to compete in an election for an official position, or to try to be elected as a member of an organisation [e.g. parliament] 68

stand in to do someone else's job for a short period of time, or to take someone else's place at an event, because that person cannot be there 33

stand out to be much better than other similar things or people 40 outstanding adj extremely good, or of a very high standard 40

stand out if someone or something stands out, they are very noticeable because they look different or behave differently from other people or things 32

stand round see stand about

stand up sb or stand sb up to fail to meet someone on purpose, especially someone with whom you were starting to have a romantic relationship 59

stand up for sth/sb to defend something that you believe is important [e.g. principle, right], or to defend a person who is being criticised 68

stand up to sb if you stand up to a powerful person or organisation, you state your opinions forcefully and refuse to agree with them or do what they want 68

start off to start a life, existence, or profession in a particular way 28

start off to start a journey 62

start out to start a life, existence, or profession in a particular way 28

start up (sth) or start (sth) up if a business or other organisation starts up, or if someone starts one up, it is created and starts to operate 49

stay ahead to continue to be more advanced and successful than other people 27

stay away from sth to avoid something that has a bad effect on you 21

stay behind to not leave a place when other people leave it 24

stay in to remain at home, especially in the evening 24

stay on to stay in a place longer than you planned or after other people have left it 24

stay out to not come home at night, or to come home late 24

stay out of sth to not become involved in a discussion or an argument 38

stay over to spend the night somewhere instead of returning to your home or continuing your journey 17

stay up to go to bed later than usual 58

Steady on! British & Australian something that you say in order to tell someone that you think what they are saying is too extreme 41

step down to leave your job, especially so that someone else can do it 45

Step on it! informal something that you say to someone, especially someone who is driving, when you want them to hurry 41

step up sth or step sth up to do more of an activity or to increase the speed of a process, usually in order to improve a situation 66

stick around informal to stay somewhere for a period of time 18

stick at sth to continue to work hard at something even though it is difficult or tiring 46 stick by sb to continue to support someone when

they are having problems 68

stick out if part of something sticks out, it comes out beyond the edge or surface of something 32 stick out if a quality or characteristic of someone or something sticks out, it is very easy to notice

stick together informal if two or more people stick together, they support each other, especially when they are in a difficult situation 38

stick up for sb informal to defend a person when they are being criticised 38

stick with sth to do or use something as you had planned and not change to something else, or to continue doing something even though it is difficult 26

stick with it informal to continue doing something even though it is difficult 19

stir up sth or stir sth up to cause arguments or bad feeling between people, usually on purpose

stock up to buy a lot of something, often food or drink 48

stop off to visit a place for a short time when you are going somewhere else 62

stop over to stop somewhere for a period of time when you are on a long journey 62

**stopover** n a short stay in a place that you make while you are on a longer journey somewhere else

stressed-out adj very worried and anxious 70 stretch away if an area of land stretches away, it continues over a long distance 24

sum up (sth/sb) or sum (sth/sb) up to describe briefly the most important facts or characteristics of something or someone 44

suss out sb/sth or suss sb/sth out informal. British & Australian to discover what someone or something is really like, or to find out how a machine or piece of equipment works 69

sweep up (sth) or sweep (sth) up to remove rubbish or dirt, usually from the floor, using a

brush 13

swell up if a part of your body swells up, it becomes larger or rounder than usual, often because of an illness or injury 56

switch off (sth) or switch (sth) off to turn off an electrical device [e.g. light, radio] or an engine

by using a switch 50, 64

switch on (sth) or switch (sth) on to turn on an electrical device [e.g. light, radio] or an engine by using a switch 64

swot up (sth) or swot (sth) up informal, British & Australian to learn as much as you can about something, especially before an exam 43

tag along to go somewhere with a person, especially when they have not asked you to go with them 59

tailback n a long line of traffic that is moving very slowly 63

take after sb to have a similar appearance or character as an older member of your family 55

take apart sth or take sth apart to separate something into its different parts 12

take around/round sb or take sb around/round (swh) to walk through a building or to visit a place with someone, showing them the most interesting or important parts 18

take aside sb or take sb aside to separate someone from a group of people so that you can

speak to them privately 12

take away sth or take sth away if you take one number away from another one, you subtract the first number from the second 12

take away sth or take sth away British & Australian to buy food in a shop or restaurant and eat it somewhere else 60

takeaway n a meal that you can buy and take somewhere else to eat, or a shop where you can buy this food 60

take back sth or take sth back to return something to the person or organisation that you borrowed or bought it from 12

take back sth or take sth back if a shop takes back goods that it has sold to you, it agrees to give you money or goods for them because they are damaged or unsuitable 20

take back sth or take sth back to admit that something you said was wrong 12

take back sb or take sb back if something takes you back, it makes you remember a period or an event in the past 23

take down sth or take sth down to write something, especially something that someone says 1, 17

take in sb or take sb in to let someone stay in your house 5

take in sb or take sb in to deceive someone, or to make someone believe something that is not true 5, 67

take in sth or take sth in to look at something carefully, noticing all the details 5, 12

take in sth or take sth in to understand the meaning or importance of news or information, or to understand and remember facts 5, 35

take in sth or take sth in if a boat takes in water, water enters the boat through a hole 5

take in sth or take sth in to make a piece of clothing narrower by removing the sewing from the edges and sewing closer to the middle of the material 5, 16

take off sth or take sth off to remove something, especially something that you are wearing 2

take off sth or take sth off to spend time away from your work 22

take off if an aircraft, bird, or insect takes off, it moves from the ground and begins to fly 62

take-off n when an aircraft leaves the ground and begins to fly 62

take off to suddenly become successful or popular

take off to suddenly leave somewhere, especially without telling anyone that you are going 12

take off sth or take sth off (sth) to subtract a particular amount from a total 12

take off sb/sth or take sb/sth off to copy the way a person behaves, or to copy the way something is done, often in order to make people laugh 33

take on sb or take sb on to begin to employ someone 45

take on sth or take sth on to accept a particular job or responsibility and begin to do what is needed 45

take out sth or take sth out to get money from a bank 47

take out sth or take sth out to arrange to get an official document [e.g. insurance policy] from an organisation or court of law 12

take out sth on sb or take sth out on sb to treat someone badly because you are upset or angry, even though they have done nothing wrong 40

take sth out of sb to make someone feel very tired 12

take over (sth) or take (sth) over to start doing a job or being responsible for something that someone else was doing or was responsible for before you 45

take over sth or take sth over to get control of a company by buying most of its shares (= the equal parts into which the ownership of the company is divided) 49

takeover n an act of gaining control of a company 49

take over to become more successful or powerful than something or someone else that is involved in the same type of activity 27

take round see take around

take sb through sth to explain something to someone, or to show someone how to do something 20

take to sb/sth to start to like someone or something 51

take to sth/doing sth to start to do something often 12

take up sth or take sth up to start doing a particular job or activity 12

take sb up on sth to accept an offer that someone has made 12

taken up with sth to be very busy doing something 12

talk sb around/round to persuade someone to agree with you or to do what you want them to do 39

talk down to sb to talk to someone as if they were less clever than you 54

talk over sth or talk sth over to discuss a problem or situation, especially before making a decision about it 3, 36

talk sb into sth/doing sth to persuade someone to do something 39

talk sb out of sth/doing sth to persuade someone not to do something 39

tear apart sth or tear sth apart to pull something violently so that it breaks into two or more pieces 30

tear sb apart to make someone feel very unhappy 51

tear sb away to force someone to stop doing something that they enjoy in order to do something else 21

tear down sth or tear sth down to destroy a building or other structure because it is not being used or it is not wanted any more 4, 30

tear up sth or tear sth up to tear something, especially paper or cloth, into a lot of small pieces 29

tell sb/sth apart to be able to see the differences between two similar things or people and judge which is which 32

tell sth/sb from sth/sb if you can tell one person or thing from a similar person or thing, you are able to say which of them is which because you can see the differences between them

tell off sb or tell sb off to speak angrily to someone because they have done something wrong 69

text back sb or text sb back to send a text message in reply to someone 70

thaw out (sth) or thaw (sth) out if frozen food thaws out, or if you thaw it out, it is taken out of a freezer so that it gradually becomes warmer and is not frozen any more 60

think ahead to think carefully about what might happen in the future, or to make plans for things you want to do in the future 37

think back to think about things that happened in the past 23

think over sth or think sth over to think carefully about an idea or plan before making a decision 3, 37

think through sth or think sth through to think carefully about something you are planning to do and to consider the possible results of it

throw yourself into sth to start doing something with a lot of enthusiasm and energy 21, 69

throw out sb or throw sb out to force someone to leave a college, school, house or organisation

throw up (sth) or throw (sth) up to vomit 56 thrown together if people are thrown together in a situation, that situation causes them to meet each other and to get to know each other 34

tidy away sth or tidy sth away British & Australian to put things in cupboards and drawers, etc. after you have been using them 21

tidy up (sth) or tidy (sth) up to make a room or a group of things tidy by putting things in the correct place 5, 13

tie in with sth if one event ties in with another, it is planned so that both events happen at the same time 33

tie up sth or tie sth up to put string or rope around something so that it is fastened together

tied up informal to be busy so that you are unable to see or speak to anyone else or go anywhere 46

tip off sb or tip sb off to warn someone secretly about something that will happen so that they can take action or prevent it from happening 67

tip-off n a secret warning or piece of secret information 67

tone down sth or tone sth down to make a piece of writing, a speech, or a performance less offensive or less critical 44

top up sb or top sb up to put more drink into someone's glass or cup 60

top-up n more drink poured into a glass or cup 60 touch down when an aircraft touches down, it lands on the ground 62

touchdown n when an aircraft lands 62 touch on/upon sth to mention a subject briefly when speaking or writing about something 44

track down sb/sth or track sb/sth down to find someone or something after searching for them in many different places 35

trigger off sth or trigger sth off to make something suddenly begin, often a difficult or violent situation 25

- try on sth or try sth on to put on a piece of clothing to find out whether it fits you or whether you like it, especially before buying it
- try out sth or try sth out to test something in order to find out if it works or to decide whether you like it 14
- tucked away to be in a quiet or hidden place which not many people see or go to 24
- turn down sb/sth or turn sb/sth down to refuse an offer or request 31
- turn in informal to go to bed 58
- turn off sth or turn sth off to touch a switch so that a machine or a piece of electrical equipment stops working, or to stop the flow or supply of something [e.g. water, electricity] 2, 64
- turn off (sth) to leave the road you are travelling on and travel along another one 63
- turn-off n a place where you can leave a main road and go onto another road 63
- turn off sb or turn sb off (sth) to make someone decide that they are not interested in something 15
- turn on sth or turn sth on to touch a switch so that a machine or a piece of electrical equipment starts to work, or to start a flow or supply of something [e.g. water, electricity] 64
- turn on sb or turn sb on to make someone interested in something 52
- turn on/upon sb to attack someone or criticise someone very strongly 30
- turn out to happen in a particular way or to have a particular result 34
- turn over (sth) or turn (sth) over to turn a page in a book so that the side which was facing down is now facing up 3, 44
- turn to sb to ask someone for help, sympathy or advice 31
- turn to sth to start to do or take something bad [e.g. crime, drugs, drink], usually because you are unhappy 55
- turn (sth) to sth if someone turns to a particular subject, or if they turn their thoughts or attention to it, they begin to think, speak or write about it 35
- turn up sth or turn sth up to increase the amount of something, especially sound or heat, that is produced by a machine [e.g. television, oven 64
- turn up if someone or something turns up somewhere, they arrive at that place 1, 2, 5, 13
- turnout n the number of people who come to watch or take part in an event or activity 33
- turnover n the total amount of money made by a company or business in a particular period of time 4, 49
- type in sth or type sth in to put information into a computer using a keyboard 65

- upkeep n the cost or process of keeping something, such as a building, in good condition 49
- use up sth or use sth up to finish a supply of something 13
- veg out informal to relax and spend time doing very little 70
- visit with sb American to spend time talking with someone that you know 69
- wait about/around to stay in one place without doing anything while you are waiting for something to happen 18
- wait up to stay awake because you are expecting someone to arrive 58
- Wait up! American something you say to tell someone to stop so that you can talk to them or go somewhere with them 69
- wake up (sb) or wake (sb) up to become conscious after sleeping, or to make someone do this 3, 58
- wake up to sth to become aware of a situation or problem 26
- walk into sth to get a job very easily 27
- walk off with sth informal to steal something, or to take something without the owner's permission 67
- walk out to leave a performance or meeting before it has ended because you do not like it or because you are angry 33
- warm to sth to become more enthusiastic about an idea 51
- warm up (sth) or warm (sth) up to prepare yourself for a physical activity by doing some gentle exercise 4, 57
- warm up (sth/sb) or warm (sth/sb) up to become warmer, or to make something or someone warmer 61
- warm-up n a preparation for physical activity
- wash up (sth) or wash (sth) up British & Australian to clean the plates, pans and other things you have used for cooking and eating a meal 69
- wash up American to clean your hands and face with soap and water 69
- Watch out! something you say to tell someone to be careful so that they can avoid danger or an accident 41
- watch out for sb/sth to be careful to notice someone or something interesting 35
- watch out for sth to be careful to notice something, especially something that might cause you problems 35
- wear down (sth) or wear (sth) down to make someone feel tired and less able to deal with a situation 17
- wear off if a feeling or the effect of something [e.g. anaesthetic, alcohol] wears off, it gradually disappears 26

- wear out (sth) or wear (sth) out use something so much that it becomes weak or damaged and cannot be used any more, or to become weak and damaged in this way 14
- weigh down sb or weigh sb down if you are weighed down with something, you are carrying too much of it 17
- weigh on/upon sb/sth if a problem or responsibility weighs on you, it makes you worried or unhappy 16
- weigh up sth or weigh sth up to think carefully about the advantages and disadvantages involved in a situation before making a decision 37
- while away sth or while sth away to spend time in a relaxed way because you are waiting for something or because you have nothing else to do 22
- wind down (sth) or wind (sth) down if a business or organisation winds down, or if someone winds it down, the amount of work it does is gradually reduced until it closes completely 49
- wind down to gradually relax after doing something that has made you feel tired or worried 28
- wind up to finally be in a particular place, state, or situation, especially without having planned it 55
- wind up doing sth to finally do something, especially without having planned to 55
- wind up sb or wind sb up informal, British to tell someone something that is not true in order to make a joke 54
- work at sth/doing sth to try hard to achieve something or improve something 46
- work off sth or work sth off to get rid of an unpleasant feeling [e.g. aggression, anger] by doing something energetic 57
- work on/upon sth to spend time working in order to produce or repair something 46
- work out sth or work sth out to do a calculation to get an answer to a mathematical question 42
- work out sth or work sth out to understand something or to find the answer to something by thinking about it 69

- work out to exercise in order to improve the strength or appearance of your body 57
- work through sth or work sth through to deal with a problem or difficulty by talking about it in detail 36
- work towards sth to try hard to achieve something 46
- wrap up sth or wrap sth up to cover something in paper, cloth, or other material, especially in order to give it to someone as a present or in order to protect it 29
- wrap up (sb) or wrap (sb) up to dress in warm clothes, or to dress someone in warm clothes or cover them with material that protects them from the cold 32
- wriggle out of sth informal to avoid doing something that other people think you should do, often in a dishonest way 46
- write down sth or write sth down to write something on a piece of paper so that you do not forget it 17
- write off sth or write sth off to accept that an amount of money [e.g. debt, investment] has been lost or will never be paid 47
- write off sth or write sth off to damage a vehicle so badly that it cannot be repaired 63
- write-off n a vehicle that is too badly damaged to be repaired 63
- write out sth or write sth out to write something [e.g. report, list] on paper, often in order to write it in a better or more complete
- write out sth or write sth out to write information on a document [e.g. cheque, prescription so that it can be used 44
- write up sth or or write sth up to write something on paper or on a computer in a complete or final form, often using notes you have made 43
- zoom in if a camera zooms in, it starts to show a clear and detailed picture of something, as if the camera was moving closer to that thing 65
- zoom out if a camera zooms out, it starts to show someone or something in less detail, as if the camera was moving away from that person or thing 65

# **English Phrasal Verbs in Use**

English Phrasal Verbs in Use is a vocabulary book for good intermediate level learners and above. It is primarily designed as a self-study reference and practice text but it can also be used for classroom work.

# English Phrasal Verbs in Use

- 70 easy-to-use two-page units: phrasal verbs are presented and explained on left-hand pages with a range of practice exercises on right-hand pages.
- Presents and explains approximately 1,000 phrasal verbs in typical contexts using tables, charts, short texts and dialogues.
- Contains a Mini dictionary with easy-to-understand definitions and cross references to units in the book.
- Provides valuable information about appropriate usage.
- Promotes good learning habits with study tips and follow-up tasks.
- Contains a comprehensive, student-friendly answer key.
- Includes the most frequently used phrasal verbs from a corpus of written and spoken English and from the Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs.

#### CAMBRIDGE INTERNATIONAL CORPUS

The Cambridge International Corpus (CIC) is a collection of over 700 million words of real spoken and written English. The texts are stored in a database that can be searched to see how English is used. The CIC also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, a unique collection of over \$0,000 exam papers from Cambridge ESOL. It shows real mistakes students make and highlights the parts of English which cause problems for students.

www.cambridge.org/corpus

REAL ENGLISH GUARANTEE

Also available: English Idioms in Use

Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs
English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate





